













# GOVERNMENT

ITS ORIGIN, GROWTH, AND FORM  
IN THE UNITED STATES

BY

ROBERT LANSING, B.A.

ATTORNEY AT LAW

AND

GARY M. JONES, M.A.

PRINCIPAL OF THE WATERTOWN, NEW YORK, HIGH SCHOOL



SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

NEW YORK

BOSTON

CHICAGO

JK 274  
L3  
1911

COPYRIGHT, 1902, 1911, BY  
SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

FEB 17 1915



## PREFACE

The majority of text-books on civil government in the United States have followed one of two methods in their treatment of the subject. One introduces the student directly to existing institutions and explains their functions, with little or no attempt to show their origin. The other begins with the more imperfect forms of local government and builds up from these to the federal system. However logical either of these methods may appear, experience has shown that the average student, conversant with American history and not that of his State, is much more familiar with the form and powers of the general government than he is with those of local governments. It was this fact that induced the authors to prepare this work on the Federal Government, in the hope that the student having thus gained an acquaintance with this, the more perfect system, would be better equipped to take up the study of his more complex State and local governments.

Furthermore, it was considered of the utmost importance, before discussing the present federal system, to familiarize the student with those general principles upon which all governments rest, and with the source and growth of free institutions in England and her colonial possessions in America. This is done in Parts First and Second. The abstract principles are defined and

explained by appropriate illustrations, and the growth of civil liberty is traced historically from its Anglo-Saxon origin to its final development in the Constitution of the United States. By these means the student has had an opportunity to apply his knowledge of American history, to understand the causes which led to the Revolutionary War and their logical result, to appreciate the force of the Declaration of Independence and the reasons for the failure of the Confederacy. He should understand why a new constitution was necessary, upon what principles it should rest, and what should be the general form and powers of the government to be established. But, if the time devoted to civics is too brief to warrant this historical examination, Part Second may be passed over without affecting the treatment of the national government.

Part Third contains a critical and analytical study of the Federal Constitution, with such historical references as are necessary to explain its provisions. The sections and clauses are inserted in the text for the convenience of the student and to insure careful study of the language of the Constitution. Unless these are so clear and simple as to demand no explanation, they are analyzed and commented on in the light of the most recent judicial decisions, official interpretations and opinions of prominent jurists; and when of peculiar interest, the language of these authorities is quoted. Besides this critical examination of the Constitution, the practical workings of the different branches of the Federal Government are explained, with especial reference to the extension or modification of their functions by statute, custom and practice.



Part Fourth contains a concise review of the principles of international and municipal law. Jurisprudence is not properly a branch of civics, but the conduct of the foreign and domestic affairs of the nation is so interwoven with questions of law that a general knowledge of this subject is essential to a right understanding of government in the United States.

The purpose of the whole work is to furnish the student with principles and facts which will be of practical value to him in the exercise of the rights of citizenship, and to present them in such a way as to impress upon him the responsibilities which rest upon every citizen of the Republic in the performance of his public duties.

The authors desire to express their thanks for the assistance and kindly criticism which they have received during the preparation of this work from Mr. Justice Harlan, Honorable John T. Morgan, Honorable John W. Foster, Andrew H. Allen, Esq., James M. Milne, Esq., and Mr. William K. Wickes.

ROBERT LANSING.

GARY M. JONES.

WATERTOWN, N. Y.





# CONTENTS

## PART FIRST.

### ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENT OF GOVERNMENT.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. PRINCIPLES OF GOVERNMENT . . . . .	3
II. CLASSIFICATION OF GOVERNMENTS . . . . .	9

## PART SECOND.

### RISE OF AMERICAN INSTITUTIONS.

I. SOURCE OF AMERICAN INSTITUTIONS . . . . .	19
II. GROWTH OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE . . . . .	25
III. THE REVOLUTIONARY GOVERNMENT . . . . .	32
IV. OUTLINE OF THE ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION . . . . .	35
V. THE GOVERNMENT UNDER THE ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION . . . . .	39
VI. THE STATE GOVERNMENTS . . . . .	42
VII. THE CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION . . . . .	46

## PART THIRD.

### THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT.

I. THE PREAMBLE OF THE CONSTITUTION . . . . .	52
II. THE LEGISLATIVE BRANCH . . . . .	56
1. Congress . . . . .	56
2. Senators and Representatives . . . . .	64
3. Organization and Method of Work . . . . .	71

CHAP.		PAGE
	4. Legislative Powers . . . . .	80
	5. Legislative Prohibitions . . . . .	107
	6. Peculiar Powers of Senate and House . . . . .	115
	7. The President and Legislation . . . . .	117
III.	THE EXECUTIVE BRANCH . . . . .	120
	1. The President and Vice-President . . . . .	120
	2. Executive Powers . . . . .	129
	3. The Executive Departments . . . . .	134
	4. Duties of the Executive . . . . .	148
IV.	THE JUDICIAL BRANCH . . . . .	154
	1. The Federal Judiciary . . . . .	154
	2. The Jurisdiction of the Federal Courts . . . . .	162
V.	THE STATES AND TERRITORIES . . . . .	170
VI.	GENERAL PROVISIONS . . . . .	181
VII.	AMENDMENTS . . . . .	183

## PART FOURTH.

### PRINCIPLES OF LAW.

I.	INTERNATIONAL LAW . . . . .	190
	1. Rules in Time of Peace . . . . .	190
	2. Rules in Time of War . . . . .	194
	3. Obligations of Belligerents to Each Other . . . . .	194
	4. Obligations of Neutrals and Belligerents to Each Other . . . . .	196
II.	MUNICIPAL LAW . . . . .	202
	1. Civil Rights . . . . .	202
	2. Wrongs . . . . .	215

### APPENDICES.

I.	THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE . . . . .	223
II.	DELEGATES TO THE CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION . . . . .	227
III.	CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES . . . . .	229



## ABBREVIATIONS

Am. & Eng. Ency. of Law, American and English Encyclopedia of Law.

Blackstone, Commentaries.

Bouvier, Bouvier's Law Dictionary.

Cooley, Cooley on Constitutional Law.

Int. Dict., Webster's International Dictionary.

Kent, Commentaries on American Law.

Maine, Ancient Law.

Rutherford, Institutes.

Story, Commentaries on the Constitution.

Tomlins, Tomlins' Law Dictionary.

Va. Cas., Virginia Cases.

Vattel, The Law of Nations.

*Italics* in quotations are the authors'.



## PART FIRST.

### THE ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENT OF GOVERNMENT.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### PRINCIPLES OF GOVERNMENT.

**Society.**—If a man did not come in contact and have relations with other men, he might live where he pleased and do what he wished; that is, his actions would be unrestricted, except as he is responsible to God. He is in a state of *Natural Liberty*. Man, however, has constant intercourse with his fellows, and his actions are affected by or interfere with theirs; thus his freedom to act as he wishes limits or is limited by the freedom of another just so far as their actions conflict. The sole inhabitant of an island would be unrestricted in his action, but two individuals would find circumstances in which their wishes would conflict, and one or the other would have to yield. This relationship is called *Society*, in which man's Natural Liberty is limited and becomes *Civil Liberty*.

**NATURAL LIBERTY:** The power of acting as one thinks fit, without any restraint or control, unless by the law of nature. — *Blackstone*.

**CIVIL LIBERTY:** Natural Liberty so far restrained by human laws as is necessary and expedient for the public good. — *Minor*.

**State.**—As men sustain such relations to one another, those living in one place or region unite for the purpose



## 4 ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENT OF GOVERNMENT

of *common* protection and interest. Such a union is termed a *State* or *Nation*, and by some writers a *Civil Society*. A state is therefore formed upon the principle of coöperation. Thus, a country attacked by enemies would be more successfully defended if the inhabitants united their efforts of resistance than if each attempted to protect only his own dwelling.

STATE; NATION: A body politic, or society of men, united together for the purpose of promoting their mutual safety and advantage by the joint efforts of their combined strength. *Cooley; Bouvier.*

CIVIL SOCIETY: By *civil society* is usually understood a state, a nation or body politic. *Rutherford.*

**Rights; Sovereignty; Law.** — In every State every individual possesses certain well-defined powers or privileges, called *Rights*, which entitle him to conduct himself within certain limits in such a manner as will promote his happiness or profit. Thus, every man is entitled to the rights of “life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness”; that is, to live and to live as he pleases, to go where he pleases and to act as he pleases, provided he does not interfere with the rights of others. In order to protect the individual in the exercise of his rights and to limit the actions of each so as to give the greatest freedom to all, certain rules of conduct, called *Laws*, are necessary. To be effective, these laws must originate from a competent source; and the individual or body of individuals having the supreme power to declare the laws in a state is called its *Sovereign*.

RIGHT: That which anyone is entitled to have, or to do or to require from others within the limits prescribed by law. *Kent.*

*Rights* are divided into:

A.—Political—The right to take part in the government, such as to vote and hold office.

B.—Civil.

a.—Absolute or Natural.

The right of Life.	} These belong to a person from birth.
The right of Liberty.	
The right of Property.	

b.—Relative.

1—Public—The right of protection by the government.

2—Private—Which grow out of the relations of  
 Husband and wife,  
 Parent and child,  
 Guardian and ward,  
 Master and servant.

SOVEREIGN: The person, body or state in which independent and supreme authority is vested. *Int. Dict.*

SOVEREIGNTY: The union and exercise of all human power possessed in a state; it is a combination of all power; it is the power to do everything in a state without accountability. *Story.*

That public authority which commands in civil society and orders and directs what each is to perform, to obtain the end of its institution. *Vattel.*

LAW: A rule of civil conduct prescribed by the supreme power in a state. *Bouvier.*

A rule of life. *Maine.*

Law in its most general and comprehensive sense signifies a rule of action; and it is applied indiscriminately to all kinds of action, whether animate or inanimate, rational or irrational. Thus we say, the laws of motion, of gravitation, of optics or mechanics, as well as the law of nature and of nations. And it is that rule of action which is prescribed by some superior, and which the inferior is bound to obey. *Blackstone.*

When Law is applied to any other object than man, it ceases to contain two of its essential ingredients, *disobedience* and *punishment*. *Tomlins.*

**Government.**—A law will not accomplish its purpose unless all the individuals in a state, to whom it applies, obey it in the same way; and this equal obedience is, therefore, compelled by the sovereign or representatives of the sovereign. The province of a sovereign is, then, to make and enforce, directly or indirectly, the

## 6 ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENT OF GOVERNMENT

laws of a state ; and this act is termed *government*. The word “government” is used not only to express the *acts* of sovereignty, but also the *agents* by means of which the sovereign performs these acts. Thus, in the United States the sovereignty is vested in the people ; the President, Congress and Courts are the instruments to execute the sovereign’s will, and are called “the Government.”

GOVERNMENT (first sense): The control, direction and regulation of public or private affairs. *Am. & Eng. Ency. of Law*.

GOVERNMENT (second sense): That institution or aggregate of institutions by which a state makes and carries out those rules of action which are necessary to enable men to live in a social state, or which are imposed upon the people forming a state. *Bouvier*.

**Powers of Government.**—As the sovereign’s power is supreme, a government’s duties can be determined and its authority limited only by the sovereign ; and a government, being the representative of the sovereign, has power over the life, liberty and property of every individual in the state ; but this sovereign power can be *justly* exercised only under certain conditions.

The conditions under which a government may *justly* deprive him of these rights are :

1. When a person wrongfully interferes with another’s rights, the government may compel him to forfeit a part or all of his own rights. All disobedience to the laws is such an interference ; and the forfeiture imposed by the government is termed *Punishment*.

2. When the state is in danger, the government may require the life, liberty or property of any member of the state. In case of war the enforced service in the army (called *conscription* or *draft*) and the taking and using an individual’s property without his consent and

without paying him for it (called *confiscation*) are examples.

The rights of a state to preserve social order and to protect itself are superior to the rights of any individual member.

**Branches of Government.**—A government, whatever its form may be, executes the will of the sovereign by the exercise of three distinct functions, known as Legislative, Judicial and Executive.

The *Legislative* function consists in *making* laws ; that is, in announcing the sovereign will in regard to any matter.

The *Judicial* function consists in *interpreting* the laws in their application to individual cases.

The *Executive* function consists in *enforcing* the laws.

These distinct functions may be exercised by the government as a whole, or by two or three separate branches, which are named after the functions which they perform.

In nearly all states the executive head selects men to act as advisers and to share in the duties of enforcing the sovereign's will. These advisers are called a *Council of State*, a *Ministry*, or a *Cabinet*. In some states, as in England, this advisory body is substantially a committee of the dominant party in the legislative branch and possesses the executive authority. In such cases the Ministry is termed the "Government."

**Constitution.** — A government's authority may be limited and defined by certain principles, which have been declared or accepted by the sovereign. These principles of government are termed a *Constitution*. Constitutions are either unwritten, as that of Great Britain, or



## 8 ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENT OF GOVERNMENT

written, as those of the United States and the German Empire. In a state which has a written constitution the word is used not only to indicate the principles of government, but also the document itself.

**CONSTITUTION:** A fundamental law or basis of government. *Story.*

The fundamental laws of a state, directing the principles upon which the government is founded and regulating the exercise of the sovereign powers. *Bouvier.*

That by which the powers of government are limited. 1 *Va. Cas.* 24.

**WRITTEN CONSTITUTIONS** are the product of modern ideas of civil government. Although the Grecian cities and some of the Italian republics possessed written laws in the nature of constitutions, it may be said that the "Fundamental Orders of Connecticut," drafted by Thomas Hooker and his friends in 1639 and substantially confirmed by the charter granted by Charles II. in 1662, was the first written constitution providing a complete form of government. And so republican was this instrument that it remained in force for forty years, after Connecticut became an independent state.

## CHAPTER II.

### CLASSIFICATION OF GOVERNMENTS.

**Divisions.**—In considering the different forms of governments there are two general divisions : Single Governments and Confederated or Federal Governments.

A *Single Government* is that of a single state in which there is a single sovereignty.

A *Confederated* or *Federal Government* is that of a Confederacy or Union. A *Confederacy* or *Union* is formed by an agreement between two or more single, independent states for mutual protection and benefit, by which each state retains a portion of its sovereign power, but surrenders to the confederacy as much as is necessary to carry out the purposes of the agreement. The word “confederation” is used commonly as a synonym of “confederacy,” but in its strict sense the former is the *agreement* to unite, and the latter the *resulting union*.

### SINGLE GOVERNMENTS.

**Basis of Classification.**—Single Governments are commonly classified according to the character of the sovereignties which they represent.

**Classification.**—From the time of the earliest writers, governments have been divided into three general classes : Monarchies, Aristocracies and Democracies.

## 10 ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENT OF GOVERNMENT

These are based, respectively, upon the three general forms of sovereignty—(1) by an individual, (2) by a class of individuals, and (3) by all the members of a state.

1. **Monarchies.**—A Monarchy is a government by one person, in whom is the sovereignty. The ruler—that is, the individual who governs—is called a monarch, sovereign, king, emperor, etc., while those over whom he rules are called his *subjects*, and possess no part of the sovereignty. Among these is a certain class of individuals, termed *nobles*, who have been granted special privileges by the sovereign. They bear such titles as marquis, earl, viscount, baron, etc., and constitute the *nobility* or *aristocracy* of the country.

Principalities and Duchies are small monarchies, whose sovereignties are in princes and dukes.

a. **DIVISION AS TO POWER.**—Monarchies are divided into two classes: Absolute Monarchies and Limited or Constitutional Monarchies.

*Absolute Monarchy.*—An Absolute Monarchy is one in which the acts of the ruler are unlimited by any principles of government. Such a monarchy is also called an Autocracy—as in the case of Russia, whose ruler is often termed “the Autocrat of All the Russias”—or a Despotism, when the government is characterized by cruelty or severity. The ruler of a despotism is called a *despot* or *tyrant*.

A Theocracy, a Patriarchal Government and a Government by a Chief are also absolute monarchies.

**EXAMPLES.**—The Jewish government was a Theocracy; that is, one in which God was the sovereign. Jehovah was the sole and absolute ruler of the nation. The best example of a Patriarchal

Government, in which the head of the family is its sovereign, is that of the Hebrew families before their settlement in Egypt ; thus, Abraham and Jacob were each supreme in the governing of their descendants. The Government by a Chief is the most common form among savages. The Indian tribes of America and the Negro tribes (or kingdoms, as they are often called) of Central Africa are familiar examples.

*Limited Monarchy.*—A Limited or Constitutional Monarchy is one in which the acts of the ruler are limited by a constitution. The limitations upon rulers vary according to the constitutions of the states over which they rule.

EXAMPLES.—Spain, Italy and Holland are examples of Limited Monarchies, while Great Britain shows to what extent the constitution may deprive the monarch of power. In the British Empire the ruler, though theoretically possessing sovereign power, is so limited by the constitution as practically to possess none. The sovereignty is in fact in the English people, and the government is in reality a democracy in the form of a monarchy.

*b. DIVISION AS TO SUCCESSION.*—Monarchies are also divided into Hereditary and Elective Monarchies. This division is based upon the transfer of the sovereignty from one individual to another.

*Hereditary Monarchy.*—An Hereditary Monarchy is one in which the sovereignty is inherited by an heir of the monarch upon his death. The rule of inheritance is fixed by custom or the constitution. The usual descent is from the father to the eldest son ; and if there is no son, then to the eldest daughter. In many European states there formerly existed what is known as the Salic Law, which prohibited females from ever inheriting the sovereignty.

*Elective Monarchy.*—An Elective Monarchy is one in



which the sovereignty, upon the death of the ruler, is transferred to another individual, chosen by the people or by a class, in whom the sovereignty rests until the new ruler is chosen. Thus the former kingdom of Poland was an elective monarchy, the right to choose a king belonging to the nobility. Rome, prior to 509 B.C., is another example of this class. So, too, governments by chiefs are usually elective monarchies (though sometimes hereditary), the tribe, the warriors of the tribe, or the heads of families being entitled, upon the death of a chief, to select his successor.

SUMMARY.—A monarchy is then either absolute and hereditary, limited and hereditary, absolute and elective, or limited and elective.

2. **Aristocracies.**—An Aristocracy is a government by a class of persons, separated from the other members of the state by reason of family, wealth or power. The sovereignty rests equally in the persons of the ruling class. The government within the class is democratic, and for this reason an aristocracy is often classed as a republic.

EXAMPLES.—The so-called Republic of Venice is the best example of an Aristocracy. The sovereignty rested in a few families, and the government was conducted through a council selected by them, who, in turn, chose the Doge and the Council of Ten, who were the actual government. Genoa, and some of the Greek cities about the seventh century before Christ, also had aristocratic governments.

HIERARCHIES.—To this class belong certain church governments called Hierarchies ; the churches are composed of the clergy and of lay members, but the sovereignty

and government is reserved to the clergy. The Church of Rome, the Greek Church and the Anglican Church have hierarchical governments.

3. **Democracies.**—A Democracy is a government in which all the members of the state possess an equal share of the sovereignty. There are two general divisions of this class of government : Pure Democracies, and Representative Democracies or Republics.

**PURE DEMOCRACY.**—A Pure Democracy is one in which the government is carried on *directly* by all the members of a community. It is only in states of small extent that this form can exist, as it would be impossible, in a large state, for its thousands of inhabitants to meet together and decide all questions of government. At the present day this form is found only among small savage tribes.

**EXAMPLES.**—Such a government is carried on as follows : The tribe meets in one assembly, the affairs of the community are discussed, the action to be taken is determined upon, and one or more are appointed to execute the will of the tribe, and after this has been done the authority of those appointed to act for the tribe ceases. A remnant of this form of democracy is still to be found in the town meeting, at which every member of the town is entitled to be present and express his opinion, and the questions of town government are decided by a vote of all the electors present.

**REPUBLIC.**—A Representative Democracy, or, as it is more commonly called, a Republic or Commonwealth, is one in which the government is *delegated* to a body of men elected from time to time by the *citizens*, as the members of the state are called, who have an equal voice in selecting those who are to act for all in the government.

**Government in a Republic.**—In a republic the three functions of government are usually administered by separate branches—the Legislative, by Representatives elected by the people ; the Judicial, by men, termed Judges or Justices, elected by the people or appointed by the Executive Branch of the government ; and the Executive, by a President elected by the people or chosen by their representatives. In most republics the Executive has a limited right, called the *right of veto*, to disapprove the acts of the Legislature; the Judiciary usually determines whether the acts of the Legislature and Executive comply with the principles declared by the constitution ; and the Legislature has power to remove the Executive and the Judiciary in case they violate the constitution. The three branches, therefore, though separate, are not absolute in the exercise of their functions, but are responsible to some other branch of the government.

**EXAMPLES.**—France is an example of a Republic. There is a single sovereignty, which rests in all the people. The three branches of government are distinct. The legislative is elected by the people, and divided into two houses, called a Senate and a Chamber of Deputies. The Republic is divided into Departments, (*each*) administered by a prefect, who is nominated by the central government, and the Departments are subdivided into Arrondissements, Cantons and Communes. The judges of the different courts are appointed by the President.

Chile is another example of a Republic with a single sovereignty. It also has a President, a Senate and a Chamber of Deputies elected by the people. For purposes of administration the Republic is divided into Provinces, and these into Departments, whose official heads are appointed by the central government, as are also the judiciary.

Ecuador and Colombia are other instances of Single Republics.



*CONFEDERATED OR FEDERAL GOVERNMENTS.*

**Classification.**—Confederated or Federal Governments, being based upon an agreement between sovereign and independent states, adopt the character of the governments of these states. Confederacies may be divided into two classes: Monarchical Confederacies and Republican Confederacies.

1. **MONARCHICAL CONFEDERACIES.**—A Monarchical Confederacy is one composed of two or more monarchies, and necessarily assumes the form of a limited monarchy, as the sovereign power is confined to such powers as are surrendered to it by the individual states which form the confederacy.

**EXAMPLES.**—The German Empire is a Monarchical Confederacy, composed of four kingdoms, six grand duchies, five duchies, seven principalities and three free towns. By its constitution the sovereignty, for certain purposes, is given to two distinct branches, the executive and the legislative. The former is in the person of a President, with the title of the German Emperor, who is by the constitution the hereditary king of Prussia, the largest and most influential state of the Confederacy. The legislative authority is in the Bundesrath, or Federal Council, appointed by the governments of the individual states, and the Reichstag, or Diet, elected by the people. There is one federal court for hearing appeals, whose judges are appointed by the Emperor. All other courts are directly under the appointment and control of the different monarchies which form the Confederacy. Each state has also its own government, with an hereditary monarch at its head, and is supreme in all matters not surrendered to the Imperial Government by the constitution.

Austria-Hungary is also a Monarchical Confederacy, composed of the Empire of Austria and the Kingdom of Hungary, over which there is a common monarch with the titles of Kaiser of Austria and King of Hungary. To the Federal Government is



surrendered the charge of foreign, military and naval affairs, finance, etc., while in all other matters the governments of the two monarchies are separate, except that the executive authority is in the one ruler. In this it differs from the German Empire, in which each state has its own monarch. Austria and Hungary are both limited monarchies, with legislative assemblies of their own. The federal legislation is by sixty delegates from each monarchy, chosen by their respective assemblies from their own members. These Delegations, as they are called, meet separately, once a year, and propose federal laws, which are submitted to the Delegation from the other monarchy. If a law is not agreed to after three interchanges of the views of each Delegation, then the one hundred and twenty delegates meet in one body and decide it.

The famous Iroquois Confederacy, or the Confederacy of the Six Nations, is another example of a Monarchical Confederacy. It was composed of six Indian tribes whose villages extended across the central part of what is now New York State. Each tribe was under the government of hereditary sachems, but the Confederacy, in matters relating to the welfare of all the tribes, was governed by a grand council of fifty sachems, any of whom could demand a meeting of the council. In military affairs, however, two hereditary chiefs of the Seneca tribe commanded the warriors of the Confederacy.

2. REPUBLICAN CONFEDERACIES.—A Republican Confederacy is governed in the same general way as a single republic, except that the sovereignty of the federal government is limited to those matters which affect the general welfare of all the states which form the confederacy, and which have been delegated to it by the states.

EXAMPLES.—The Swiss Confederation is a Confederacy of twenty-two separate republics, called Cantons. By its constitution the legislative and executive authority of the Confederation is in a Federal Assembly composed of two houses, the State Council and the National Council. The former has forty-four members, two from each Canton, and the latter consists of representatives elected by the people, one representative for every

20,000 inhabitants. The executive authority is delegated by the Federal Assembly to a Federal Council of seven members elected for three years. The President and Vice-President of this Council are selected each year by the Federal Assembly, and no member of the Council can be President two years in succession. It is the duty of the Federal Council to propose laws and to execute them when passed by the two houses. The Federal Council may, when it desires, and must, when petitioned by 30,000 citizens, submit a law to all the people, who may, by vote, adopt, amend or reject it. This principle of submission to the people is called the *referendum* and is a modified form of Pure Democracy. The act of petitioning by the people for a *referendum* is termed *initiation*. There is only one federal court, whose jurisdiction is limited. Each Canton has its own judges ; and, in all matters not delegated to the Federal Government by the constitution, it is supreme and has its own independent, republican government.

The United States has a government of this class, although in some particulars it possesses the character of a single republic. This likeness and difference will be shown when this government is studied more in detail.

**The Federal Principle.**—The principle which underlies this form of government is that each state of the union possesses the sovereignty in all matters which affect itself alone, while in all matters which relate to two or more of the states, or which have to do with foreign nations, the sovereign power is in the Federal Government.

SINGLE GOVERNMENTS.

1. Monarchies {
 

As to Power	{	Absolute	{	Autocracy. Despotism. Theocracy. Patriarchy. By a Chief.
		Limited, or Constitutional.		
As to Succession	{	Hereditary. Elective.		
2. Aristocracies. *Hierarchies.*
3. Democracies {
 

Pure.
Representative, or Republican.

CONFEDERATED GOVERNMENTS.

1. Monarchical Confederacies.
2. Republican Confederacies.

DIVISIONS OF GOVERNMENT IN A REPUBLIC.

1. Legislative, by Representatives *elected* by People.
2. Executive, by President *elected* by {
 

People.
Representatives.
3. Judicial, by Judges {
 

<i>elected</i> by People.
<i>appointed</i> by Executive.

## PART SECOND.

### RISE OF AMERICAN INSTITUTIONS.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### SOURCE OF AMERICAN INSTITUTIONS.

**The Anglo-Saxons.**—The principle of civil liberty, which is the important element in our system of government, was already strongly developed among the Angles and Saxons when they conquered England in the fifth century. They were believers in the rights and powers of the individual. They elected their own chiefs and had a voice in the government of their clans. Under their rule the people in their various councils made laws and treaties, levied some taxes, raised land and sea forces, and exercised many other legislative and also judicial powers. These powers, although modified by changing conditions, became firmly settled under the successive Saxon kings in the form in which they are historically known as the “Laws of Edward the Confessor.”

**Effect of Norman Conquest.**—The Norman conquest wrought a change. The conquerors did not possess the Saxon ideas of liberty and equality. To them the king was the state and source of all law, and in the confusion of this change in ideas of government there followed con-



fiscation of property, oppressive laws, and the practical enslavement of the conquered people through the introduction of Feudalism.

These conditions continued during the reigns of "The Conqueror" and William II. But Henry I., fearing the effect of popular discontent, promised by a "Charter of Liberties," granted in 1101, to restore in part the "Laws of Edward the Confessor." This Charter is important as the first limitation upon the powers of the crown.

**Magna Charta.**—A century later (June 15, 1215) the great instrument of English liberty, known as Magna Charta, was wrung from King John by the people and nobles, who had revolted against his despotic rule. Of the sixty-three provisions of this great document, those which are important in the study of our government are the following :

**TAXES.**—No scutage\* or aid† shall be imposed in our kingdom unless by the general council of our kingdom ; except for ransoming our person, making our eldest son a knight and once for marrying our eldest daughter ; . . .

**GENERAL COUNCIL.**—And for holding the general council of the kingdom concerning the assessment of aids . . . we shall cause to be summoned the archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls and greater barons of the realm, singly by our letters. And furthermore, we shall cause to be summoned generally . . . all others who hold of us in chief, for a certain day . . . and to a certain place ; and in all letters of such summons we will declare the cause of such summons.

By these provisions the taxing power was placed in

\*SCUTAGE: Tax imposed instead of military service.

†AID: Feudal tax paid by the vassal to his lord.



the people, and definite means were prescribed for its exercise.

**PERSONAL RIGHTS.**—No freeman shall be taken or imprisoned or disseised\* or outlawed, or banished, or anyways destroyed, nor will we pass upon him, nor will we send upon him, unless by the lawful judgment of his peers† or by the law of the land.

We will sell to no man, we will not deny to any man, either justice or right.

A freeman shall not be amerced‡ for a small offense, but only according to the degree of the offense ; and for a great crime according to the heinousness of it.

These provisions were to protect the subject in his personal freedom by guaranteeing that punishments should be proportionate to the enormity of the crime.

**PROPERTY RIGHTS.**—Neither shall we nor our bailiffs take any man's timber for our castles or other uses, unless by the consent of the owner of the timber.

This provision was intended to protect the subject in his property, and is so manifestly just that it has continued in force to the present day.

**House of Commons.**—The next development in popular government was the establishment of the House of Commons, which, like Magna Charta, was the result of a conflict between the king and the barons, in which the latter were successful. Henry III. and his son having been taken prisoners, the government passed temporarily into the hands of Simon de Montfort, the leader of the rebels, who, to strengthen himself, summoned a parlia-

\*DISSEISED: Unlawfully deprived of property.

†PEERS: Equals, of the same rank.

‡AMERCED: Punished at the discretion of a court.

ment (1265), in which he gave seats not only to those entitled to them under Magna Charta, but also to two representatives from each town or borough. This was the first House of Commons, the representative body of the common people. The example thus set was not immediately followed. But in 1295 Edward I., in order to obtain supplies for wars in France and Scotland, summoned a parliament, to which he called "two burghers from every city, borough and liege-town to sit with the nobles and barons," stating in the summons that "what concerns all should be approved by all." This was the permanent establishment of the House of Commons.

**Rights of Colonists in America.**—These were the governmental rights to which Englishmen were entitled at the time of the colonization of America, and to these rights, as also to those subsequently granted, the settlers in America became entitled as fully as the inhabitants of London or other English towns. For in the charter under which the Plymouth and London Companies were organized the king stated that the colonists and their descendants should

have and enjoy all liberties, franchises and immunities of free denizens and natural subjects, within any of our other dominions, to all intents and purposes as if they had been abiding and born within this our realm of England, or in any other of our dominions.

**Habeas Corpus Act.**—Of the rights subsequently granted, but two will be noticed. First, the Habeas Corpus Act. From the time of Magna Charta it had been a principle of law that a prisoner could demand from a court an order, or *writ*, compelling his jailer to produce him before

the court for the purpose of determining whether he was legally imprisoned. This did not apply in cases of arrest by the Royal Council, and as a result many persons had been illegally and arbitrarily imprisoned. To check this abuse, Parliament, in 1679, passed the Habeas Corpus Act, by which it was provided that no judge should refuse the writ to any prisoner, or to order his release from confinement if such confinement was illegal.

**Bill of Rights.**—The other important measure is the Bill of Rights. When James II. was deposed, and William and Mary were called to the throne, there was annexed to the Act, which determined the future succession, a statement of rights which definitely fixed the limits of royal power and stated the principles of English constitutional government. After a recital of complaints the Bill continues:

That the pretended power of suspending of laws, or the execution of laws by regal authority, without consent of parliament, is illegal.

That it is the right of the subject to petition the king; and all commitments and prosecutions for such petitioning are illegal.

That the raising or keeping a standing army within the kingdom in time of peace, unless it be with the consent of parliament, is against law.

That the freedom of speech and debates or proceedings in parliament ought not to be impeached or questioned in any court or place out of parliament.

That excessive bail ought not to be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

DATES OF PRINCIPAL EVENTS IN RISE OF  
AMERICAN INSTITUTIONS.

- 449-455 Conquest of Britain by the Saxons and Angles.
- 1050-65 Laws of Edward the Confessor.
- 1066 Norman Invasion of England.
- 1101 Charter of Liberties.
- 1215 Magna Charta.
- 1265 First House of Commons.
- 1295 House of Commons made Permanent.
- 1297 Confirmation of the Charter by Edward I.
- 1606 Charter of the Plymouth and London Companies.
- 1679 The Habeas Corpus Act.
- 1689 Bill of Rights.



## CHAPTER II.

### GROWTH OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE.

**Cause of American Revolution.**—The American Revolution is traceable to one cause—the violation of the rights and liberties of Englishmen, inherited by and guaranteed to the colonists. Until the cession of Canada to England the colonists had been allowed to exercise all the rights of Englishmen, for the menace of the French on the north and west was sufficient to warn the British ministry that any trouble or irritation would weaken its power in the New World. But with the fall of Quebec three measures were proposed which were intended to give the British Government more complete control over the colonists. These were the enforcement of the Acts of Trade, the taxation of the colonies and the quartering of troops in America.

**Acts of Trade; Writs of Assistance.**—The Acts of Trade were statutes which, first enacted during the reign of Richard II., had been so extended that at this time they practically prohibited the colonists from exporting their produce in any other than English ships, from importing goods from any other than English ports, or from manufacturing goods which could be made in England. While the original purpose of these measures was to destroy the Dutch trade with the colonists, it had developed into a



scheme to make of the colonies sources of supply for the markets of England and consumers of her products; and the colonists, appreciating this, continued their foreign trade by smuggling.

To detect and punish smugglers, recourse was had to Writs of Assistance, which were warrants issued by a court empowering officers to enter and search any premises for the purpose of finding smuggled goods. This action of the Government produced violent opposition throughout the colonies. James Otis declared that it was an invasion of private liberty such as had "cost one king of England his head and another his throne." He argued that the colonists were not bound to obey laws in the making of which they had no voice, and that the forcing of the colonists to pay exorbitant duties upon goods not imported from England was "taxation by a foreign legislature without our consent."

**Quartering of Troops; Stamp Act.**—The excitement over the Writs of Assistance had not ceased before the ministry determined to station permanently in the colonies a force of ten thousand soldiers to aid the colonial governors in the enforcement of the laws. For the purpose of partially defraying the expense of these garrisons it was further proposed to levy a tax in the form of a stamp duty, and in 1765 the Stamp Act was passed. Its enactment was the signal for violent popular demonstrations in the colonies, and as a result a congress of delegates from Massachusetts, South Carolina, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Connecticut, Delaware, Maryland, New Jersey and New York met at the city of New York, October 7, 1765. This meeting, known as the "Stamp Act Con-

gress,"\* lasted two weeks. It drew up a Petition to the English people, and a Declaration of Rights and Grievances, in which were set forth the rights of the colonists to the liberties of Englishmen, among which was the right to tax themselves; it complained of the Stamp Act and asked for a repeal of the Acts of Trade. But there was no suggestion of revolution. The determination of the colonists to protect their rights, and the support of a strong party in Parliament, compelled the repeal of the Stamp Act in 1766, but the obnoxious principle underlying it was preserved; for with the Act of Repeal was passed the "Declaratory Act," whereby it was asserted that the colonies were

subordinate unto and dependent upon the Imperial Crown and Parliament of Great Britain, and that Parliament hath, and of right ought to have, full power to make laws and statutes of sufficient force and validity to bind the colonies and people of America, subjects to the crown of Great Britain, in all cases whatsoever.

**Townshend Acts of 1767.**—It was not long before the threat implied in this declaration was carried out. In 1767 Townshend, Chancellor of the Exchequer, who was opposed to a conciliatory policy, obtained the passage of Acts which placed duties on wine, oil, fruit, glass, paper,

\* There had been prior meetings for common purposes. In 1643 Massachusetts Bay, Connecticut, Plymouth and New Haven had joined under the name of the "United Colonies of New England" in "a firm and perpetual league of friendship and amity for offense and defense . . ." Again, during the French and Indian War, representatives from the New England Colonies, and from New York, Pennsylvania and Maryland met at New York to devise plans of union and defense.

lead and teas, and at the same time revived the Writs of Assistance. These enactments met with the same reception as the Stamp Act. The colonists recognized in them the hateful principle of taxation without representation. The Virginia Assembly declared the tax illegal and protested against its enforcement, and later adopted a pledge not to buy any of the goods upon which such taxes were levied. Similar action was taken in several other colonies.

**Coercive Action of British Government.**—The king, enraged by the temper of these petitions and resolutions, declared the originators to be rebellious and guilty of treason, and measures were adopted to repress the expression of such sentiments. The colonial governors were directed to prevent public assemblies, and troops were sent to Boston and New York. The danger of this policy was, however, felt in England, and at length, in April, 1770, Parliament repealed the provisions of the Townshend Acts, except such as related to the duty on tea, which was made so low as to render smuggling unprofitable.

**Committees of Correspondence.**—Meanwhile the agitation continued, and open conflict seemed unavoidable. Samuel Adams, who saw the probability of war, introduced into the Boston town meeting in November, 1772, a resolution that “a committee of correspondence be appointed to state the rights of the colonists . . . and also request of each town a free communication of their sentiment on this subject.” The idea was received everywhere with favor. Similar committees were selected in other colonies, who spread the doctrine of liberty among

the people and formed an incipient union by constant intercourse upon all matters of public interest.

**The Tea Agitation.**—Still the ministry was blind to the dangers, and upon the demands of the East India Company determined to enforce the tea tax. For this purpose, in the fall of 1773, cargoes of tea were shipped to New York, Boston, Philadelphia and Charleston. At Philadelphia and Charleston the cargoes were either returned or stored in damp cellars. At Boston, on the night of December 16, 1773, the ship was boarded, the cargo broken open and the tea emptied into the harbor. This was called the “Boston Tea Party.” At New York a similar demonstration was made by the “Sons of Liberty.”

**Retaliation by Great Britain.**—Retaliatory measures were at once taken by Parliament. The principal ones were aimed at Massachusetts, which, possessing a charter government, was deemed by the ministry as being most hostile to British interests. These closed the port of Boston, annulled the charter of the colony and placed the government in the hands of a governor and a council selected by him, and provided for the further quartering of troops in Boston. Another Act provided for the trial in England of all soldiers, magistrates or revenue officers charged with murder.

**First Continental Congress.**—In view of the dangers threatened by such enactments the lower house of the Massachusetts legislature called upon the other colonies to join in a congress to meet at Philadelphia, and in response to the call delegates from the different colonies met, September 5, 1774, in what is known as the “First



Continental Congress.” Among the delegates were Samuel and John Adams, John Jay, Patrick Henry and George Washington. They adopted a Declaration of Rights, and prepared a Petition to the king, praying for a redress of wrongs. They also presented an address to the same effect to the people of Great Britain, united in a pledge to import no goods from England or her colonies, provided for a second Continental Congress and adjourned October 26, 1774.

**Second Continental Congress.**—These measures, however, failed of their purpose, and the colonists determined upon armed resistance. April 19, 1775, the first engagement was had at Lexington, and the news of it was the signal for a general uprising. May 10, 1775, the British garrison at Ticonderoga surrendered to Ethan Allen, and the same day the Second Continental Congress assembled at Philadelphia. On June 7, 1776, Richard Henry Lee of Virginia introduced into the Congress the following resolution: “Resolved—That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States ; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British Crown ; and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved.” On June 11, 1776, Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman and Robert R. Livingston were appointed a committee to prepare a suitable declaration of grievances and a statement of the attitude of the colonies. This committee made its report July 1st. The next day the Lee resolution was passed, and on the Fourth of July the Declaration of Independence was adopted.

**Declaration of Independence.**—Thus the separation of the colonies from England was made complete. An examination of the Declaration of Independence discloses no new governmental principles. (See Appendix I.) It is a simple statement of the inherent rights of the people, which they had never surrendered, together with a plain narration of the wrongs which had compelled their act. It is a concise exposition of the true principles of government, and has been through the existence of the Union a great and powerful factor in the maintenance of a pure national life.

#### DATES OF PRINCIPAL EVENTS IN THE GROWTH OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE.

- 1645-63** Navigation Acts.
- 1760** George III. crowned.
- 1761-64** Writs of Assistance.
- 1763** Peace of Paris.
- 1765** Stamp Act.
- 1765** Act for the Quartering of Troops.
- 1765** Colonial Congress.
- 1766** Repeal of Stamp Act.
- 1766** Declaratory Act.
- 1767** Townshend Revenue Acts.
- 1770** (March 5) Boston Massacre.
- 1770** Repeal of Townshend Duties, except on Tea.
- 1773** (December 16) Boston Tea Party.
- 1774** (September 5) First Continental Congress.
- 1775** (April 19) Battle of Lexington.
- 1775** (May 10) Second Continental Congress.
- 1776** (July 4) Declaration of Independence.

## CHAPTER III.

### THE REVOLUTIONARY GOVERNMENT.

MAY 10, 1775, TO MARCH 1, 1781.

**The Revolutionary Government of Congress.**—A revolutionary government is one formed to carry out the will of those who claim the sovereignty of a nation in opposition to those who possess it. Such a government usually assumes an authority not delegated to it, but acts in the interests of those whom it represents, as necessity requires. This was the character of the government established by the Second Continental Congress. Its sole object was resistance to the tyrannical measures of the British Crown. To accomplish this, it created committees upon military and Indian affairs and foreign relations, established a general treasury, appointed Washington commander-in-chief of the Continental Army, recommended to the colonial governments a uniform system of militia and provided for a continental postal service. To furnish revenue, paper money, known as “Continental Currency,” was issued; for the large sums necessary to carry on the war could not be borrowed at home and a foreign loan had not as yet been proposed.

**Articles of Confederation.**—But the Congress saw that its government was revolutionary and inadequate to meet the obligations which belong to sovereign states. There-

fore, on the same day that the committee was appointed to draft the Declaration of Independence, another was selected, with Samuel Adams as its chairman, “to prepare and digest the form of a confederation to be entered into between these colonies.” This committee made its report on July 12, 1776, but it was not until November, 1777, that a form of government was agreed upon. Further delay was occasioned by the examination of the proposed plan by the state governments, and it was not until July 9, 1778, that the Articles of Confederation were formally adopted. Then they were signed by the delegates of eight States—New Hampshire, Rhode Island, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Pennsylvania, New York, Virginia and South Carolina. The North Carolina delegates signed on the 21st, and three days later, those from Georgia. New Jersey ratified November 26, 1778; Delaware, May 5, 1779; and Maryland, March 1, 1781.

**Land Claims Delay Ratification.**—The cause of the delay on the part of New Jersey, Delaware and Maryland grew out of a state of affairs which became of the greatest moment to the future history of government in the United States. Along the western frontier of the States lay great tracts of unoccupied lands. On the separation of the colonies from England, the States whose charters had extended their territory indefinitely west claimed, as the successor of the British Crown, the sovereignty of these vacant lands as far as the Mississippi River. Against these claims Maryland in particular vigorously protested, refusing to enter the Confederacy unless the sovereignty over these lands was made general, and de-



claring that if independence was secured it would be by the efforts of all the States, and, therefore, this territory should become the common property of the Confederacy.

**New York's Action.**—Affairs were in this condition when New York, in September, 1780, ceded to the Confederacy all its claims to the lands lying westward of its present boundary. Induced by the sacrifice of New York, and fearing that England would be encouraged by the apparent dissensions among the States, the Maryland Legislature ratified the Articles in January, 1781, and in the same month Virginia ceded to the Confederacy all her claims to any part of the lands which are known as "The North-West Territory." The formal act of subscribing to the Articles by the Maryland delegates in Congress occurred March 1, 1781, and the following day the Congress assembled under the Confederation.

#### DATES OF PRINCIPAL EVENTS RELATING TO ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION.

- |             |       |     |  |   |               |
|-------------|-------|-----|--|---|---------------|
| <b>1776</b> | June  | 11, | Committee appointed on Plan of Government.   |   |               |
|             | July  | 12, | First Report of Committee.   |   |               |
|             | Aug.  | 20, | Second Report of Committee.  |   |               |
| <b>1777</b> | Nov.  | 17, | Circular Letter sent to States.  |   |               |
| <b>1778</b> | July  | 9,  | Articles of Confederation signed by New Hamp-<br>shire, Rhode Island, Massachusetts, Connecti-<br>cut, Pennsylvania, New York, Virginia and<br>South Carolina. |   |               |
|             | July  | 21, | Articles signed by North Carolina.   |   |               |
|             | July  | 24, | "  | " | " Georgia.    |
|             | Nov.  | 26, | "  | " | " New Jersey. |
| <b>1779</b> | May   | 5,  | "  | " | " Delaware.   |
| <b>1781</b> | March | 1,  | "  | " | " Maryland.   |
|             | March | 2,  | Congress meets under Articles.   |   |               |

## CHAPTER IV.

### OUTLINE OF THE ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION.

**1. Form and Purposes of the Union.**—The form of the union was a confederacy, in which each State retained its sovereignty and every power not expressly delegated to the United States. The purposes of the Union were the common defense, the security of liberty and mutual and general welfare.

**2. The System of Government Established.**—All the functions of government were to be exercised by a Congress of delegates, each State being represented by not more than seven or less than two (delegates) appointed annually; but in the proceedings of the Congress each State could cast only one vote, regardless of the number of its delegates. There was no provision for executive and judicial branches apart from the legislative.

During a recess of Congress, which could not exceed six months, “The Committee of the States,” consisting of one delegate from each State, was empowered to exercise certain of the powers of Congress, but no power which required the assent of nine States could be so exercised.

**3. The Powers of the Government.**—The most important legislative powers were to declare war, appropriate money, borrow money and issue bills of credit, agree on

the number of land forces and make requisition upon each State for its proportion, determine the number of naval forces, and build and equip a navy. These powers could only be exercised by the assent of *nine* States. Besides the foregoing, the Congress, by a *majority* of the States, could make peace, establish rules concerning captures on land and sea, regulate coinage, fix a standard of weights and measures, make rules for the government of the army and navy, ascertain the money necessary for public expenses and apportion among the States the amounts which they must pay into the common treasury.

The most important executive powers of Congress were to appoint a commander-in-chief of the army and to enter into treaties with foreign nations, provided no treaty of commerce should interfere with the right of each State to fix duties and imposts ; and to exercise these powers the assent of *nine* States was required. Congress could also, by a *majority* of the States, send and receive ambassadors, establish post-offices and exact postage, appoint civil officers and officers of the army and navy except regimental officers, direct the operations of the army and navy, and organize and conduct the common treasury of the Confederacy.

The powers of the Congress relating to judicial matters were limited to the establishment of courts for the trial of piracy and felonies committed upon the high seas and to the determination of questions of boundary and jurisdiction between two or more States.

**4. Restrictions upon the Government.**—Besides the limitation of the government to those powers conferred upon it by the Articles, Congress was prohibited from granting

any titles of nobility, and its officers were forbidden to receive a reward, office or title from a foreign ruler or state.

**5. The Restrictions upon and Requirements of the States.**

—Without the consent of the United States no State could send or receive ambassadors or enter into any agreement or treaty with a foreign state, lay any imposts or duties which would interfere with any treaty previously made by the United States, have land or naval forces in time of peace, engage in war unless actually invaded or to prevent an Indian outbreak, and grant letters of marque and reprisal except after a declaration of war by the United States or when a State was infested by pirates.

Each State was required to grant to the people of every other State the same privileges as those possessed by its own, to surrender fugitives from justice upon proper requisition, to give full faith and credit to the records, acts and judicial proceedings of the other States, to levy and collect the taxes apportioned to it by the Congress for the purposes of the union and pay the same into the common treasury.

**6. Other Provisions.**—The Articles also provided for the admission of Canada into the Union, pledged the public faith to the payment of money borrowed and debts contracted by the revolutionary government, declared that the union so formed should be perpetual and that the Articles could only be amended by an agreement of the Congress and the confirmation of the amendment by the legislature of every State.



## ANALYSIS OF ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION.

**Powers of Congress** *requiring the assent of 9 States, and which could not be exercised by the Committee of States.*

<i>Legislative</i>	{	Declare war.	} Money.
		Appropriate	
		Borrow	
<i>Executive</i>	{	Organize army and navy.	
		Make treaties.	
		Appoint commander-in-chief.	
<i>Judicial</i>	{	Organize admiralty courts.	
		Determine boundaries between States.	

**Powers of Congress** *requiring the assent of 7 States, which could be exercised by Committee of States when Congress was not in session.*

<i>Legislative</i>	{	Make peace.	
		Make rules as to captures.	
		Regulate coinage, weights and measures.	
		Pass military laws.	
		Estimate expenses.	
<i>Executive</i>	{	Determine method of land valuation.	
		Send and receive ambassadors.	
		Control the postal service.	
		Appoint officers of the army and navy.	
		Direct military operations.	
	{	Conduct the common treasury.	

**Limitations on States.**

<i>Restrictions</i>	{	Send or receive embassies.	
		Make treaties.	
		Lay imposts or duties contrary to treaty.	
		Have an army in times of peace.	
		Engage in war.	
<i>Requirements</i>	{	Grant letters of marque in times of peace.	
		Grant equal rights to citizens of other States.	
		Surrender fugitives of justice from other States.	
		Recognize records of other States.	
		Keep a disciplined militia.	
	{	Levy and collect proportion of taxes.	

## CHAPTER V.

### THE GOVERNMENT UNDER THE ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION.

MARCH 2, 1781, TO MARCH 4, 1789.

**Condition at Close of War.**—The independence of America having been recognized in 1783, the inefficiency of the government became evident to the statesmen of the Confederacy. The greatest weakness lay in the fact that the functions of government were not performed by separate branches, but were all vested in the Congress, which, while it possessed sufficient legislative powers, had not the executive power to put them into effect. It could declare war, but possessed no means to carry it on ; it could make peace, but could not compel the States to comply with the terms ; it could appropriate money, but had no power to levy and collect taxes ; and, finally, there was no provision for the control of the “North-West Territory ” or for the regulation of commerce.

**Attempts to Correct Articles.**—Immediately upon the termination of the war, attempts were made to rectify the faults of the Articles ; but these were futile, as each State turned to the advancement of its local interests and opposed any agreement to surrender, for the benefit of all, any rights which it possessed. The Confederacy was gradually disintegrating—the States drawing apart from

each other. There were rumors of a division into two or more confederacies, and even a monarchy was suggested.

**The Public Lands.**—One thing, however, tended to hold the Union together—the ownership of the public lands. Any State withdrawing from the Confederacy would lose its interest in the Western Territory, whose great resources were then beginning to be realized. Besides this, Congress in its struggle to maintain the credit of the nation had sold portions of this land to meet the public debt.

**Commerce.**—The recognized necessity of uniform commercial relations was, however, the immediate cause of the strengthening of the union. The lack of power in Congress to regulate trade had left the States to act separately in this important matter. The result was a great variance in the laws, and commerce became so demoralized that the Virginia Legislature called upon the other States to send delegates to a convention at Annapolis in September, 1786, to see if some plan could not be devised for the establishment of a uniform system of trade regulations among all the States.

**Annapolis Convention.**—At the convention which met in response to this appeal, delegates from only five States were in attendance, and the object for which it was called was not attained. But the discussions which were held disclosed the fact that the weakness of the government was generally recognized, and led to a resolution suggesting a convention of delegates from all the States “to devise such further provisions as might appear necessary to render the constitution of the Federal Government adequate to the exigencies of the Union.”

**Constitutional Convention.**—After considerable delay

Congress adopted the suggestion and issued a call to the States to send delegates to a convention to meet at Philadelphia, May 14, 1787. It was not, however, until the end of May that the convention was formally opened, but from that time the delegates from the twelve States represented (Rhode Island having failed to send a delegation) were in continuous session until September 17, 1787, when they completed the scheme of government which is known as the Constitution of the United States.



## CHAPTER VI.

### THE STATE GOVERNMENTS.

**Colonial Governments; Provincial.**—Colonial governments are usually divided into three classes: Provincial (Royal or Crown), Proprietary and Charter. New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, Virginia, the Carolinas and Georgia had Provincial Governments. They possessed no charters or grants, but were under the control of royal governors, whose only limitations were their commissions and the will of the crown, who appointed and removed them at pleasure. There was also a council appointed by the crown or governor, which aided the governor in his duties and formed the upper house of the colonial legislature. The governor was also authorized to summon an assembly, chosen by the people of the colony, which formed the lower house of the legislature. These two legislative houses had the right to make laws concerning local matters, but their acts could be vetoed by the governor and annulled by the crown. The governor, as the royal representative, possessed exceptional powers. He could remove members of the council and prorogue, or dissolve, the assembly and order another election.

**Proprietary.**—Maryland, Pennsylvania and Delaware had Proprietary Governments; that is, the rights of local government were granted by the crown to a certain indi-

vidual termed the “proprietary” or “lord proprietary.” The form of government was similar to that of the royal colonies. The proprietary either appointed a governor or acted in that capacity himself, selected a council and authorized the assembling of representatives for local legislation. In Maryland the acts of the proprietary government were not subject to royal approval; but over those of Pennsylvania and Delaware the crown possessed a veto power.

**Charter.**—The Charter Governments comprised Massachusetts, Connecticut and Rhode Island. The charters, which were granted by the crown, were, in fact, written constitutions, which the sovereign was bound to respect, and established a form of government similar in many respects to the two classes already described. In Massachusetts the governor was appointed by the crown, but the people were represented by an assembly chosen by them, and their representatives had the privilege of selecting the governor’s council. The people of Connecticut and Rhode Island possessed the same rights as those of Massachusetts, with the further privilege of electing their own governors. In fact, they were true republics, with whose local government the English sovereign could not legally interfere.

**Change to State Governments.**—With the opening of the War for Independence all the colonies except Rhode Island and Connecticut organized provisional governments similar to those with which they were familiar, substituting elections by the people in place of appointments by the crown or the lord proprietary.

**Character of the New Governments.**—As a consequence

of the hatred which had been engendered against the royal governors during the period immediately preceding the war, the powers of the chief executive in the new governments were much more limited than under the colonial governments. There was such strong opposition to the idea of a single executive that at first in Pennsylvania, Delaware, New Hampshire and Massachusetts a council was substituted in place of a governor, and it was not until 1792 that Delaware recognized that a governor elected by the people was not a menace to liberty. The assembly of representatives, chosen by the people, which was found in every colony, was retained without change, as it was clearly republican in character. The governor's council became the senate, elected by the people or by their representatives, but to which no one could be chosen unless he possessed certain qualifications. At first, in Pennsylvania and Georgia the entire legislative power was vested in the assembly, but later these States adopted the dual form of legislature.

**The English System the Model.**—These State governments were in their general form modeled after the English system, as it was understood by the colonists. The governor resembled the English ruler. The upper house of the legislature, like the House of Lords, was supposed to represent the land owners and wealthy colonists, as the "Lords" represented the English nobility. The lower house, like the House of Commons, was composed of representatives of all classes, without distinction as to rank or social position. There was this difference, however, between the two systems. In England the King and the "Lords" were hereditary, and the "Commons"

only were chosen by the people, while in the States all officers were selected by popular vote ; in England the sovereignty was in the monarch, while in America it was in the people.

### ANALYSIS OF COLONIAL GOVERNMENTS.

**Provincial** (New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, Virginia, the Carolinas and Georgia).

*Legislative* { Council appointed by { Crown  
or  
Governor.  
Assembly chosen by Colonists.  
Veto by Governor.  
Veto by Crown.

*Executive* : Governor appointed by the Crown.

*Judicial* : Judges appointed by the Crown.

**Proprietary** (Maryland, Pennsylvania and Delaware).

*Legislative* { Council appointed by Lord Proprietary.  
Assembly chosen by Colonists.  
Veto by Governor and in some cases by Crown.

*Executive* { Lord Proprietary  
or  
Governor appointed by Lord Proprietary.

*Judicial* : Judges appointed by Lord Proprietary.

**Charter** (Massachusetts, Connecticut and Rhode Island).

*Legislative* { Council selected by Representatives.  
Assembly chosen by Colonists.  
Veto by Governor.

*Executive* : Governor { Appointed by Crown  
or  
Selected by Colonists.

*Judicial* : Judges { Appointed by Crown  
or  
Selected by Colonists.



## CHAPTER VII.

### THE CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION.

**Prominent Delegates.**—Of the fifty-five delegates who took part in the Constitutional Convention, three are particularly worthy of mention. These are George Washington, James Madison and Alexander Hamilton.

**Washington.**—On the organization of the Convention, Washington was unanimously chosen president. His difficulties as commander-in-chief and the progress of events since 1783 had convinced him that some decisive action was necessary to preserve the Union. His views as to the necessary steps were general ; he left the detail to others. But he possessed a profound comprehension in applying governmental principles to present needs, while his experience during the war had broadened his views, so that they were national rather than local. In fact, he seemed to belong to all the States, and not to Virginia alone, and throughout the deliberations at Philadelphia he sought the general good rather than the advancement of the interests of his own State.

**Madison.**—The most active delegate was James Madison, then thirty-six years of age. He had served his State in Congress and had been prominent in the legislature. It was Madison who conceived the idea that distinct national and state sovereignties might exist in one system of gov-

ernment and be applied to the same individuals ; and it was his draft of a scheme of government, known as the “ Virginia Plan,” which became the basis for our present Constitution. During the sessions Madison not only spoke on every important question, but kept full notes, which are our chief source of knowledge of the proceedings of the Convention.

**Hamilton.**—Equally prominent with Madison was Alexander Hamilton, then thirty years old. He had been a member of Congress and a delegate to the Annapolis Convention. His influence upon the Convention was marked, for it was through his efforts that the national government obtained a large part of the power with which it was clothed by the Constitution. His strength lay in his great knowledge of the principles of government, his power to apply them, and his ability to present his opinions in a clear and convincing manner.

**Franklin.**—Of almost equal influence was Benjamin Franklin, then in his eighty-second year. His knowledge of public affairs extended over half a century, and he had represented the colonies and States in foreign countries for twenty-five years. This experience gave to his utterances a weight which their brevity and common-sense enhanced. He was the peacemaker of the Convention. When debates became bitter or too personal, it was Franklin who by his wit and tact restored the delegates to good humor. When the Constitution was drafted in its final form, it was Franklin who moved its adoption, using in part the following words, which breathe the loftiest patriotism:

The opinion I have had of its errors, I sacrifice to the public

good. Within these walls they were born, and here they shall die. If every one of us, in returning to our constituents, were to report the objections he had to it . . . we might prevent its being generally received, and thereby lose all the salutary effects and great advantages resulting naturally in our favor among foreign nations as well as among ourselves from our real or apparent unanimity. . . . I hope, therefore, that for our own sakes as a part of the people, and for the sake of posterity, we shall act heartily and unanimously in recommending this Constitution . . . wherever our influence may extend, and turn our future thoughts and endeavors to the means of having it well administered.

**Other Statesmen Present.**—Among the other prominent delegates was James Wilson of Pennsylvania, a signer of the Declaration of Independence and the great apostle of representative government. He was one of the leading American lawyers of his day, and his speeches in favor of the Constitution present the advantages of popular representation in the strongest light. There were also present Gouverneur Morris, to whose pen we are indebted for the clear and concise style of the Constitution, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney of South Carolina, Rufus King and Elbridge Gerry of Massachusetts, and Roger Sherman of Connecticut.

**Statesmen Absent.**—Conspicuously absent from the Convention were Thomas Jefferson, at that time representing the Confederacy in Europe, and John Jay, then Secretary of Foreign Affairs. John Hancock and John Adams were not delegates, and Samuel Adams and Patrick Henry were opposed to any change in the existing government.

**Systems of Government Discussed.**—Three forms of republican government were discussed in the Convention: namely, the *National*, which placed the power in the

hands of a central government and substantially did away with State lines except for the purposes of governing ; the *Confederate* or *Federal*, which was similar to that instituted by the Articles of Confederation ; and a third form, a compromise between the others, which placed the power in all national matters in a central government, and left the local matters of each State to the exercise of its own sovereignty. Under the latter plan both the general and State governments dealt, in their separate capacities, with the individual.

**Plans Proposed.**—At the very outset, two plans were presented to the Convention. One of these, based upon the national idea, was prepared by Madison, and was known as the “Virginia Plan.” The other, based upon the confederate or federal\* principle, was the work of Charles Cotesworth Pinckney. On June 13 the committee to which these plans had been referred reported favorably on the “Virginia Plan.” Then the New Jersey delegates submitted what is known as the “New Jersey Plan,” which proposed a government similar in many respects to that of the Confederacy. The larger States favored the “Virginia Plan,” which based a State’s representation in the central government upon the number of its inhabitants, and gave the national leg-

\* *Use of the Word “Federal.”*—With the adoption of the Constitution the word “federal” became generally applied to the system of government thereby established, while the system based upon a league between independent States was termed a “confederacy.” Thus the word “federal” was applied to the party which aimed at the adoption of the Constitution; and during the late civil war the same term was used to designate the Union forces, while the word “confederate” was applied to the armies of the seceding States.



islature the power of veto over state legislation ; while the smaller States supported the "New Jersey Plan," which gave to each State an equal voice in the general government. Both plans differed radically from the Articles of Confederation, in that the three branches of government—the executive, legislative and judicial—which in the Confederacy had all been joined in the Congress, were separate and distinct.

**Virginia Plan Adopted.**—The general outline of the "Virginia Plan" was adopted, and the Convention proceeded to take up the different subjects in detail and to harmonize the antagonisms among the various factions. It was during these discussions that the patience and patriotism of the delegates were often taxed to the utmost, and it was only through concessions by all that their labors were in the end successful.

**Constitution Submitted to the States.**—The completed Constitution, a mass of compromises, was then submitted to the States for adoption. Conventions were called and a period of the most intense excitement followed. The work was attacked on all sides. The conservative element in the different States strenuously opposed the new form of government. They saw the power of the States diminished, and in their stead a central government established, which they believed to be so strong as to endanger state and personal liberty. Objections were made to the Executive, to Senators and Representatives voting as individuals, to an oath of allegiance to the general government, and particularly to the absence of a Bill of Rights. The delegates were also made the object of attacks and their motives were questioned.

**“The Federalist.”**—It was in meeting and answering these objections that Hamilton, assisted by Madison and Jay, was most active, and exerted a powerful influence in obtaining the ratification of the Constitution. Their replies and arguments, published in a series of papers known as “The Federalist,” and which is still considered among the most learned and valuable treatises upon the Constitution, silenced all attacks and convinced the people of the benefits of the proposed change. And after prolonged discussions, and even riots and violence, the conventions met, the work was ratified\* and the established Constitution went into effect March 4, 1789.

A list of the delegates is placed in Appendix II.

\* The States ratified the Constitution in the following order : Delaware, December 7, 1787; Pennsylvania, December 12, 1787; New Jersey, December 18, 1787; Georgia, January 2, 1788; Connecticut, January 9, 1788; Massachusetts, February 6, 1788; Maryland, April 28, 1788; South Carolina, May 23, 1788; New Hampshire, June 21, 1788; Virginia, June 26, 1788; New York, July 26, 1788; North Carolina, November 21, 1789; and Rhode Island, May 29, 1790.

## PART THIRD.

### THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### THE PREAMBLE.

Many conflicting opinions exist concerning the sources of American institutions. One extreme view is that of Sir Henry Maine, who says that the "Constitution of the United States is a modified version of the English Constitution . . . which was in existence between 1760 and 1787." In other words, American institutions are a mere copy of those of the England of that period. The other extreme is expressed by Mr. Gladstone—that "it is the greatest work ever struck off at any one time by the mind and purpose of man." That is, that the scheme of government as set forth in the Constitution is wholly original and the invention of the members of the Constitutional Convention. Each of these views is partially wrong. The Constitution is not a copy, nor is it entirely original. The safer statement is that it is the product of the experience and observation of the people in their connection with England, their colonial and state governments, and the Confederacy of 1781. This experience and observation had impressed upon the people the importance of a stable union. Its advantages had been

seen during the colonial period under the distressing circumstance of French invasion and Indian outbreak. Its necessity had been emphasized during the struggles of the War of Independence. Its weakness had been realized under the loose league of the Confederacy.

During the war the purpose to win independence held the States together ; but when this was attained and the danger of foreign aggression had been removed, sectional prejudices and local interest proved stronger than the common tie, and the " league " began to fall apart. The faults of the Confederacy were apparent. Washington called them to the attention of the States ; and Hamilton and others, foreseeing the danger of disintegration, earnestly urged the establishment of a stronger government. It was to correct these faults and save the Union that the Constitutional Convention had been called. The problem before the delegates was definite. Their task was to devise such provisions as should " appear to them necessary to render the . . . Federal Government adequate to the exigencies of the Union."

With the single exception of the experiment of the Confederacy, American experience had been limited to governments which dealt directly with the individual. This was the basis of government in England, the Colonies and the States, but it was not so in the Confederacy. The latter dealt only with States, and the chief cause of its failure had been its inability to control the individual. Fully comprehending this defect, the Convention changed the basis of government and made authority over the individual the fundamental principle.

Such a change in the object of governmental influence



necessitated a corresponding change in the source of governmental authority, for it was a principle of civil liberty, developed through the ages by the constant struggle against arbitrary rule, that governments derive "their just powers from the consent of the governed." This had been the foundation of colonial resistance to the tyrannical acts of the English Ministry, and in the Declaration of Independence it had been prominently asserted as a right which authorized the establishment of a new nation. The principle had been recognized in the Confederation, for the authority of the central government had been granted by the States—the governed.

Under the Constitution the governed were no longer the States ; they were the individuals composing the States. "The People of the United States" must, therefore, be the source of power ; they must be made parties to the agreement before the government could justly exercise authority over them as individuals ; their consent would make possible the remedy which was sought ; and this attained, perfect union was assured.

This principle became the controlling idea in the Convention. And when by their solemn act the people adopted the Constitution and became parties to the national compact, a government was established which originated, as Daniel Webster declared, "entirely with the people and rests on no other foundation than their assent"—a government "of the people, by the people and for the people," a government of a union which the test of civil war has proved to be indivisible. It is the announcement of this principle and its application which is contained in the Preamble of the Constitution. For it

asserts that the fundamental law and the government thereby established are the work of the people, and that the powers conferred were not delegated by sovereign States, but by the individuals of the United States, and it confidently declares the purposes of the governed and the benefits which would result in these memorable words:

We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE LEGISLATIVE BRANCH.

#### *1. CONGRESS.*

**The National Legislature.**—Among the first decisions reached in the Constitutional Convention was the division of the Government into three branches—the Legislative, Executive, and Judicial—and it was provided that:

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives. (Art. I, Sec. 1.)

**Parliament.**—At the time of the Constitutional Convention the English legislature was a parliament, consisting of two “houses”: the “Lords” and “Commons.” The House of Lords was composed of men theoretically possessing great ability, deriving their office not from the people, but from birth or appointment by the crown, and having in the main a life tenure. Conservative, dignified and removed from popular agitation and influence, it was a preserver of traditions and an opponent to the advancement of democratic principles. The House of Commons was composed of elective representatives, men of the people, chosen for short or uncertain periods, and swayed by the passions of their constituents. Radical, hasty, influenced by popular clamor, it was antagonistic

to ancient privileges and the promoter of the growing power of the people.

**American Legislatures.**—In the several States there prevailed practically the same system, but under the Confederation the legislature consisted of a single “house.” One of the earliest and bitterest contests of the Convention of 1787 arose out of the discussion as to the form of the national legislature.

**The Virginia Plan.**—The “Virginia Plan” provided for a legislature consisting of two houses, the members of the lower body to be elected directly by the people, while those of the upper house were to be chosen by the lower house from persons nominated by the legislatures of the respective States. The representation in both houses was to be proportionate to population ; and upon all questions the votes of the individual members were to be counted, a practice contrary to that of the Continental Congress and the Congress of the Confederacy. This proposition was opposed by the smaller States, which viewed it as an attempt to give the control of national affairs to the larger States. It was, in fact, a plan to secure representation to the people as individuals and to remedy one of the defects existing under the Articles of Confederation.

**The New Jersey Plan.**—The “New Jersey Plan” proposed a continuance of the Congress of the Confederacy. It was intended to preserve the full power and influence of each State, jealous of its own rights and envious of the growing importance of its neighbors.

**Connecticut Compromise.**—It was early decided that there should be two houses. The next point of discussion was the basis of representation,—whether the unit of rep-



resentation should be the State or the individual. A solution was presented by the Connecticut delegates, who were familiar with a legislature of two houses, the members of which were chosen in different ways. They proposed that the members of the lower house should be elected by the people in proportion to the population of the several States—*i.e.*, individual representation ; while in the upper house each State should have an equal number of members—*i.e.*, State representation. This is known as the “Connecticut Compromise.”

**Representation.**—It was finally provided that :

The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States,  
. . . (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 1.)

The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the legislatures thereof, for six years ; and each Senator shall have one vote. (Art. I., Sec. 3, Cl. 1.)

Thus there was an apparent copying of the English system in the establishment of a Congress which resembled Parliament in having two houses, the members of which differed as to manner of election and term of office, and only one of which houses directly represented and was responsible to the people, as individuals. And yet this copy is not real, for in England the House of Lords represents a class of society, while the Senate represents all the people of the State as a political body.

**Qualifications of Members.**—The framers of the Constitution recognized a difference between these two houses, not only in composition, but also in the character of the members. It was expected that the Senate would be the

more dignified body, and would demand men of greater learning, broader views and more extended experience than those of the lower house. Provision was made to meet this expectation by requiring as qualifications that:

No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, . . . (Art. I., Sec. 3, Cl. 3.)

No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, . . . (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 2.)

It will be observed that in the case of both Senators and Representatives extended citizenship is made a necessary qualification, to the end that their interests may be to the fullest degree in sympathy with the welfare of the nation. And to further emphasize this sympathy, and extend it to the States, it is required that each shall, "when elected, be an inhabitant of that State" in or for "which he shall be chosen." (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 2, and Sec. 3, Cl. 3.) And further, in order to secure the time and talents of such members to the legislative business of the government, it is provided that:

No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, . . . ; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office. (Art. I., Sec. 6, Cl. 2.)

This provision prevents the possibility of dishonest practices on the part of officials who, as such, might be responsible to themselves as members of Congress, or who in the latter capacity might determine the compensation

which they would receive in the other. Neither can a Senator or Representative be appointed as an Elector for the election of President. (Art. II., Sec. 1, Cl. 2.) The reason for this provision will be considered under the Executive Branch.

**Apportionment.**—The next difference in the Constitutional Convention arose over the method of apportioning the Representatives among the several States. In this controversy the parties were no longer the large and the small States, but those who favored and those who opposed slavery. The “Virginia Plan” had provided for representation proportionate to the population of the States, and this was interpreted by the delegates from the States which depended chiefly on slave labor to include slaves as well as freemen. On the other hand, the States whose citizens had few slaves claimed that, inasmuch as slaves were not entitled to any political privileges, such an interpretation was illogical and would give greater political power to the free voter in the “slave” State than to his brother in the “free” State—a principle opposed to the ideas of civil equality. This question became involved with another—the basis of taxation. It is a principle of justice that those who enjoy benefits must bear the attendant burdens. So the “free” States insisted that taxation and representation should be apportioned on the same basis, and that if the slave was to be counted for the purpose of representation, so he must be counted for the purpose of apportioning taxes. This was opposed by the “slave” States, and a crisis was imminent when Madison proposed a solution in the form of a compromise by which it was determined that:



Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States . . . according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons. (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 3.)

**Ratio.**—The first apportionment of such representation was made on the basis of one Representative for every thirty thousand people (*Id.*). Thus, if a “free” State had a population of three hundred thousand persons, and a “slave” State a population of two hundred and ten thousand free persons and one hundred and fifty thousand slaves, a total population of three hundred and sixty thousand persons, each State would be entitled to ten Representatives and be liable to pay an equal amount of a national tax. Lest any State should be unrepresented by reason of a population of less than the ratio, it was further provided that “each State shall have at least one Representative” (*Id.*).

This method of apportioning Representatives and direct taxes continued until after the Civil War, when, in order to complete the work of granting full rights to the freedmen, Amendment XIV. was adopted, the second section of which provides that:

Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote . . . is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, . . . except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.



Each State, therefore, is entitled to representation proportionate to the whole number of its citizens, and cannot be deprived of such right, save by its own act in unduly restricting political privileges.

**Increase of Members.** — The Constitution does not fix the number of members in either house, but leaves it subject to change. Such changes have occurred as the country has grown in population, and the ratio of representation has been increased after each national census,\* taken in pursuance of the Constitution (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 3), until it is now (1911) over one hundred and ninety-four thousand, notwithstanding which the House has grown from a body of sixty-five in the First to one of three hundred and ninety in the Sixty-second; and in the first session of the present Congress (1911), which began April 4, 1911, there were three hundred and ninety-one members.† A similar growth has also occurred in the Senate. Although no change has been made in a State's representation in the upper house, each State admitted to the Union has added two members to that body; so that it has increased from a membership of twenty-six to ninety-six.

**Term of a Congress.** — The first Senators elected were, in pursuance of the Constitution (Art. I., Sec. 3, Cl. 2), divided into three classes with terms expiring in two, four, and six years respectively. As a result, one-third of the Senate has to be renewed every two years (*Id.*). This fact, together with the provision for the election of Representatives, determines the life of a Congress as two years.

**Sessions.** — A Congress begins on the 4th day of March

\* Taken in 1790, and each tenth year since.

† After March 3, 1913, the ratio of apportionment shall be 211,877 population and the number of Representatives 433. Arizona and New Mexico will elect one member each to the present Congress.

in every odd-numbered year and continues until the second succeeding 4th day of March. Such “Congress shall assemble at least once in every year” (Art. I., Sec. 4, Cl. 2). This meeting is called a *session*, and the regular date for its commencement is the first Monday in December. A Congress has thus two sessions. The first, called the “Long Session,” commencing on the first Monday in December in an odd-numbered year, continues until the next succeeding spring or summer. The second, or “Short Session,” commencing on the first Monday in December in an even-numbered year, continues until the next 4th day of March. As a Representative is elected in an even-numbered year, it happens that more than a year elapses between his election and the first session of the Congress to which he is elected. But this is not always so. If necessary, Congress can be assembled by the President as soon as it comes into being ; for he can, “on extraordinary occasions, convene” Congress (Art. II., Sec. 3), so that there may be more than the two regular sessions. This happened in the Fifty-fifth Congress, in which there were three sessions.

**Place of Meeting.**—Congress convenes in the Capitol in the City of Washington, the two houses meeting in rooms in the opposite wings of the building, known as the Senate Chamber and Hall of Representatives. But whenever for any cause it would be dangerous for the members to meet at their usual places, the President is authorized to convene Congress at any other place he may deem proper.

**Change in “House.”**—It is possible that there may be in each Congress a House of Representatives composed of

members entirely different from those of the preceding Congress. Theoretically, each "House" is *new*.

The framers of the Constitution looked upon the House as the direct channel for the expression of the public will. Hence it has often happened that the membership of that body has so changed that the majority in one House has been of opposite political faith to that of the preceding one, as the popular mind has been changed by some crisis.

**Stability of Senate.**—With the Senate this is not so. This body is never *new*. Only one-third of its members is changed at the same time, so that it is continuing, two-thirds being composed of men of legislative experience. As a result, the Senate is not materially affected by change in popular sentiment.

**Characteristics Contrasted.**—Thus we may view the two houses of Congress as reflecting the general character of the two houses of Parliament—the one, the House, vigorous, active, progressive, full of popular spirit and often chosen to meet the demands of present conditions ; the other, the Senate, calm, slow and bound by tradition ; the one, a spur and promoter of legislation, the other, a check and curb.

## 2. SENATORS AND REPRESENTATIVES.

**Election.**—The times, places and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof ; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing Senators. (Art. I., Sec. 4, Cl. 1.)

Under this provision Congress can divide States into



Congressional Districts and take any action relative to the election of members except to change the place of electing Senators, or, under Clause 1 of Section 2 of Article I., to prescribe the qualifications of electors of Representatives. Congress has, however, left these matters almost entirely to the several States, only prescribing a few rules for the purpose of uniformity.

**Senators.**—Senators are elected by the legislatures of the States. Such election takes place on the second Tuesday after the organization of the legislature chosen next before the expiration of the preceding senatorial term. In each house of the legislature the members present, by a *viva voce* vote, name a person or persons for Senator, and the name of the person receiving the greatest number of votes is entered upon the journal of that house. At noon on the next day the members of both houses meet in a joint session, at which the journals of the two bodies are read, and if the same person received a majority of the votes in both houses he is declared elected Senator. However, if no person receives such majorities, the members in joint session proceed by a *viva voce* vote to choose a Senator, a majority of all the members being necessary for an election. If such a majority is not secured at the first session, the two houses meet jointly at noon on each succeeding legislative day and take at least one ballot for Senator until one is elected or the legislature adjourns. If a vacancy in the representation of any State in the Senate occurs by reason of death or otherwise, such vacancy is filled by the legislature in the same manner as a Senator is regularly elected. But if such vacancy should occur during a recess of the legislature, the gov-



ernor of such State may fill the vacancy by a temporary appointment until a Senator is elected at the next session of the legislature (Art. I., Sec. 3, Cl. 2); but the governor cannot make such an appointment after the legislature has failed to elect. A person so elected or appointed receives from the governor of the State a certificate of his election or appointment directed to the President of the Senate of the United States.

**Representatives.**—The number of Representatives to which each State is entitled is determined by Congress after each decennial census. Congress has fixed the time of their election as the “Tuesday next after the first Monday in November” in every even-numbered year. In States entitled to more than one Representative, they are elected by “districts composed of contiguous territory and containing as nearly as possible an equal number of inhabitants,” which districts are determined and the boundaries fixed by the legislatures of the States. When, in a reapportionment, a State’s representation is increased, the additional Representatives are chosen by vote of the whole State, until the State is redistricted. They are called *Representatives* or *Congressmen at Large*.

**Gerrymandering.**—This division of a State into Congressional Districts has often led to a political process called “gerrymandering,” whereby the dominant party in the State has so manipulated the division as to secure to itself the greatest possible number of Representatives. The scheme, though originating in Virginia, is named from Elbridge Gerry, during whose term as Governor of Massachusetts, that State was so redistricted that one of the districts resembled a salamander, which a political oppo-

nent called a "gerrymander." The process consists of uniting hostile sections into one district, or of adding to a district in which the sentiment is evenly divided a section in which the friendly votes are sufficient to give the control to the dominant party.

**Residence.**—Although by the Constitution a Representative is only required to be a resident of the State from which he shall be chosen, custom has added that he also reside in the district from which he is elected. This is often criticised for the reason that it limits selection and excludes many persons of preëminent ability because of residence in districts which the opposite political party dominates. It is contrary to the English custom, which permits the election of a member of the House of Commons from a political division in which he is neither a resident nor has property. But the American custom makes the representative of a district acquainted with the needs and wishes of his constituents and guarantees a more general representation by precluding the possibility of all the representatives being chosen from one class or section of a State—a condition contrary to the theory of a republican form of government.

**Qualifications of Voters.**—It is a notable fact that Representatives are the only members of the national government elected directly by the people. For the purposes of their election it is provided that

the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature. (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 1.)

This is a matter beyond the control of Congress and entirely within the power of the States to determine.

Hence the qualifications vary. In some States only males twenty-one years of age possess the electoral privilege. In others it belongs to both males and females. In some there are additional requirements, such as education or property or poll-tax. But whatever such qualifications may be, they must be uniform in their application throughout the State, and the right

to vote shall not be denied or abridged . . . on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude. (Amendment XV.)

**Vacancies.**—If vacancies occur “in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies” (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 4). The rules governing such election are the same as in the case of an original election. The person so elected serves only during the balance of the unexpired term. All Representatives-elect are given certificates of election under the seal of their State, addressed to the House of Representatives.

**Delegates.**—Besides Senators and Representatives, there is in each Congress one delegate from each Territory, who has “a seat in the House of Representatives, with the right of debating, but not of voting.” Such delegates are there to present to Congress the needs and further the interests of the Territories which they represent.

**Review of Elections.**—The certificates of election of Senators and Representatives are not absolute guaranties of seats in Congress. For, if there have been frauds or illegal practices in their election, the house to which they have been chosen has the power, after investigation, to set aside such election ; for:



Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, . . . (Art. I., Sec. 5, Cl. 1.)

**Oath.**—Before these various Representatives take their seats they are required to take an oath to support the Constitution of the United States (Art. VI., Cl. 3). This is administered to Senators by the President of the Senate, the new Senator being presented for that purpose by the other Senator from his State, called his “colleague,” and to Representatives and Delegates by the Speaker of the House of Representatives. The oath is as follows:

I [name] do solemnly swear [or affirm] that I will support and defend the Constitution of the United States against all enemies foreign and domestic ; that I will bear true faith and allegiance to the same ; that I take this obligation freely, without any mental reservation or purpose of evasion, and that I will well and faithfully discharge the duties of the office on which I am about to enter. So help me God.

The action of former Senators, Representatives and certain federal and state officers in taking up arms against the United States during the Civil War led to the adoption of Section 3 of Amendment XIV., to give effect to which a further, or “iron-clad,” oath was administered for several years. The provisions of this Amendment have, however, been repealed, and only the regular oath is now required. And “no religious test” or oath can be required of any member of either house of Congress or of any federal or state officer (Art. VI., Cl. 3).

**Compensation.**—Each Senator, Representative and Delegate receives the sum of seven thousand five hundred



dollars per year, together with a mileage fee of twenty cents per mile in going to and returning from each regular session. The Speaker of the House of Representatives receives twelve thousand dollars per year. In addition to his regular salary each member is allowed a fixed sum for newspapers, stationery, clerk hire and other necessary expenditures.

**Detention of Members.**—The Constitution contains two provisions for the personal protection of Members of Congress. The first is that :

They shall in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same ; . . . (Art. I., Sec. 6, Cl. 1.) \*

This is but an enactment of an old English law for the protection of members of Parliament. As early as the reign of Edward I. it was declared unbecoming for a member of the king's council to be "distrained" in time of its session, and in 1433 a statute was passed exacting a penalty from anyone who molested members coming to or returning from Parliament. This section extends to arrests for all civil causes, detention as a witness or summons as a juror, and is not lost by a stoppage on the route for rest or on account of illness. Its object is not merely the protection of the individual member, but is for the convenience of the Government, which should not be deprived of the counsel and presence of legislators for any but the most serious reasons. Incidentally, this provision is a safeguard against the passage of noxious legislation

\* For definitions of Treason, Felony and Breach of the Peace, see pages 158, 215.

by the detention or removal, under legal forms, of men whose presence would make such action impossible.

**Freedom of Debate.**—The second provision is that “for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place” (*Id.*). This is also an English principle. In 1621 a statute of the House of Commons declared that :

Every member hath freedom from all imprisonment . . . for or concerning any bill, speaking or declaring of any matter or matters touching the Parliament or Parliament’s business.

The same principle was confirmed by the Bill of Rights. This provision makes it possible for a member to criticise any matter or person who may be before Congress, without fear of being charged with slander before a court, and is one of the strongest legislative provisions by reason of the perfect freedom which it guarantees.

**Adjournments Limited.**—Having so provided for the protection of the members, it was expected that each house would devote its time to the business of the Government. And, that each branch should have the constant presence of the other, it was provided that :

Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting. (Art. I., Sec. 5, Cl. 4.)

### 3. ORGANIZATION AND METHOD OF WORK.

**Presiding Officers.**—The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided. (Art. I., Sec. 3, Cl. 4.)

The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker . . . (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 5.)

These provisions present a striking resemblance to the English custom. The presiding officer of the Senate is not a member of the body over which he presides nor is he chosen by that body, but, like the Lord Chancellor, derives his position by virtue of his office. He possesses only the right of a "casting" or deciding vote in the case of a tie—that is, when the votes for and against a question are equal. In the House of Representatives, as in the House of Commons, the presiding officer is a member of the body, elected by his fellow-members and known by the name of "Speaker," a title derived from that of the person formerly selected by the House of Commons to sign and present its "petitions," as bills were called, or other communications from that body to the king. He is entitled to vote upon all questions before the House.

**The Speaker.**—These officers are expected to perform only the usual duties of presiding officers, but the Speaker has gradually absorbed powers until he is one of the most important officers of the Government. He has great influence with the House, and to a large extent controls legislation. He is usually the most capable member of the party in the majority, possessing great experience in legislation, familiarity with parliamentary procedure and knowledge of men and affairs.

**Other Officers.**—Each house possesses the power to choose its other officers (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 5 and Sec. 3, Cl. 5). Besides the President *pro tempore* of the Senate (an officer who presides in the absence of the President of that body), the officers in each house are a Clerk, Sergeant-at-Arms, Chaplain, Postmaster, Librarian and



Doorkeeper, each of whom has one or more clerks and none of whom is a member of either body. The *Clerk* takes charge of the transacted business of his house, keeps the roll of members, preserves the minutes, is the custodian of bills and, in a word, has general management of the routine work. The *Sergeant-at-Arms* is the police officer and messenger of the house. He acts for the body, and disobedience to him is disobedience to the house. In the House his symbol of office is the "mace," and its appearance in his hands is generally sufficient to quell the greatest disorder and restore quiet. He is also the paymaster of his house. The *Doorkeeper* has charge of the rooms in which the sessions are held and the galleries where the public assembles to listen to the debates. These officers are usually nominated in a "caucus," or meeting, of the members of each political party, held before the assembling of Congress, and are then chosen by the votes of the body in open session.

**Quorum.**—No business can be transacted in either house without the presence of a quorum, which consists of a majority of the members elected to that body. (Art. I., Sec. 5, Cl. 1.)

But a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each house may provide. (*Id.*)

The object of these provisions is to secure in each body the presence of a sufficient number of its members, so that business may receive proper consideration. It is a recognition of the principle that all acts should be those of the majority. It insures the presence of a quorum by giving



to a few members—in the House fifteen—the power to cause absent members to be arrested and brought before the House by the Sergeant-at-Arms. This is known as a “Call of the House.”

**Counting a Quorum.**—The necessity of a quorum has often been taken advantage of by members hostile to the dominant party, and oftentimes in the case of a close vote a sufficient number of members have left the room to reduce the number actually present to less than a quorum. Formerly a quorum was determined by the number of votes cast on a question, and it was possible for members to remain in their seats and not answer as their names were called, thus defeating by silence what they were powerless to defeat by open methods ; for, if less than a quorum responded to the roll-call, the transaction of business was suspended, although enough members might be visibly present to constitute a quorum. This led to the adoption of a rule whereby all members present can be counted whether they vote or not. And a further rule provides that when all such members have been counted, if there is still no quorum, there may be had a “Call of the House,” the arrested members being given the right to vote upon the question before the House.

**Formalities of Organization.**—The first meeting of the House is presided over by the Clerk of the previous House, who calls the roll of the members-elect, and, having ascertained the presence of a quorum, directs the election of the Speaker. Oftentimes several ballots have to be taken before an election is secured. As soon as he is elected, the Speaker takes the oath of office, which is

administered by the Representative longest in continuous service as a member. The roll of the House is then called, and the Speaker administers the oath of office to the members. It is then usual to send a committee to inform the Senate that the House is organized, and to appoint another committee, which, in conjunction with a similar one from the Senate, waits upon the President and informs him that Congress is ready to receive any communication that he may be pleased to make.

**Drawing Seats.**—At an early time in the session occurs the drawing of seats. These are arranged in semicircular rows facing the Speaker's chair, and are equal to the number of members and delegates. A quantity of small balls is prepared, each having a number corresponding to a number on an alphabetical list of the members. These are thoroughly intermixed, and drawn from a box by an attendant, and as each member's number is drawn he selects his seat. The members of the same political party usually sit on the same side of the House, and it is customary to permit the members longest in service to have first choice of seats. While this is going on in the House, a similar action is occurring in the Senate, where the new members are sworn in by the president of the Senate and seats are assigned.

**Committees.**—After the officers of the two houses have been selected, the committees are appointed. This is a very important matter, for upon their work depends, to a large extent, the usefulness of Congress. These committees are many in number and various in size, and are intended to have jurisdiction of all subjects which come before their respective houses. Thus in the House the

Committee on Ways and Means has control of matters relating to revenue and the bonded debt of the United States ; the Committee on Appropriations has charge of matters pertaining to the support of the different branches of the Government. There are also committees on Foreign Affairs, the Judiciary, Military Affairs, Banking and Currency, Railways and Canals, Territories, Insular Affairs, District of Columbia, Pensions, Post Offices, Coinage, Weights and Measures and many others. In the Senate are the Finance and Appropriations Committees, corresponding to the Committees on Ways and Means and Appropriations of the House, the Foreign Relations Committee and many others with jurisdictions similar to those of the House.

**Method of Appointment.**—In the Senate these committees are appointed by the body itself, but in the House they are usually appointed by the Speaker. This is a source of great power to him, for he is enabled to exert great influence upon legislation by the selection of men holding views similar to his own for the prominent positions on important committees ; but it is customary to give the opposing political party a minority representation on each committee. In each house the member first named on a committee is its chairman, and those of the most important committees possess great control over legislation. Thus the Chairman of the Committee on Ways and Means is, after the Speaker, the most influential member of the House. He is considered the leader of his party on the “ floor.” He is intrusted not only with the management of the business of his committee, but also with many other matters pertaining to the



general conduct of work and the control of parliamentary tactics.

**Work of Committees.**—To these committees are referred every measure introduced into either house of Congress. Being small bodies, they are able to give close attention to the questions presented, and by reason of training in special lines are enabled to exercise better judgment than could be done by the members of the house acting as a whole. Thus legislation is expedited, and thousands of useless measures are “killed in committee”—that is, cast aside and not reported. In the exercise of their duties the committees may call in the assistance of experts, may take testimony and compel the attendance of witnesses, and conduct any investigation which the importance of the matter before them may warrant. Upon their report depends largely the action of their house ; for although their decision is not final, yet, in the main, their judgment is followed.

**Rules.**—The proceedings in each house are controlled by the rules which it makes for itself (Art. I., Sec. 5, Cl. 2). These are practically the same in both bodies, and through the experience of years have grown into an intricate system, which not only directs the progress of business, but affects the decorum and conduct of members (*Id.*).

**Method of Legislation.**—The progress of a bill, or proposed draft of a law, through the House is substantially as follows: It is introduced by being presented to the Clerk, indorsed with its title and the name of the member introducing it. The Clerk gives it a number, and when reached under the proper order of business it is



read the first time. It is then handed to the Speaker, who puts the question whether it shall be read a second time. If it is so decided, the bill goes back to the Clerk to await its second reading. This must regularly be on another day. When it is again read, it is sent to the committee which has charge of its subject. Here it is examined, and with or without amendments is reported to the House. It is then considered in what is called a "Committee of the Whole" (an informal organization of the whole House for the purpose of discussion, over which some member, other than the Speaker, presides), where it may be debated and further amended. It is then read a third time, and the question is put, "Shall the bill pass?" If it receives a majority vote, it is signed by the Speaker and attested by the Clerk, with a note of the date of its passage. This method, with but slight differences, is pursued in the Senate. A bill, after its title, begins with the following words: "Be it enacted by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, That" . . .

**Filibustering.**—The progress of a bill is not always easy. At every point it may meet opposition. Amendments, delays, all the tricks of parliamentary tactics may be employed to impede it, and oftentimes an "active minority" may be able to defeat the will of the majority. Such methods are called "filibustering." They are not usually successful, however; for by the rigorous enforcement of the rules a Speaker is able to guide a measure through the fiercest opposition. Even debate can be cut off in the House by a call for the "previous question," which is undebatable, and being adopted brings up the measure

for immediate vote. In the Senate there is no way to stop debate, and it is possible for an opposition to consume a whole session in the discussion of a question. This is an instance of "senatorial courtesy," a sentiment arising from the dignified character of the body, which excludes all limitations upon the official conduct of a Senator and concedes to him freedom in accordance with the dignity of his position.

**Records of Proceedings.**—Pursuant to Article I., Section 5, Clause 3, a record of the proceedings in each house is kept in a "journal," in which is set forth the roll, bills introduced, motions, resolutions, rulings of the presiding officer, business, and votes taken with the name and vote of each member when required by one-fifth of the members present. In addition to this record there is published each day during the session a paper called the "Congressional Record," in which is a *verbatim* report of the incidents of the preceding day. This is distributed according to law among certain officials, Senators and Representatives and libraries, and upon payment of a small fee to the public at large.

**Interaction of Houses.**—In its work neither house is independent of the other. While each acts by itself, both must agree in the result, or action fails. Thus, a measure which has passed one house may be rejected by the other, or a bill may be amended in one house after its passage in the other, in which case it must repass the first body in its amended form. Often, for the purpose of hastening important legislation, the same bill is introduced simultaneously in both houses, when it is called a "joint bill," a "joint resolution" or a "concurrent reso-

lution.” All these possibilities lead to many complications ; and frequent interviews, or, as they are called, “meetings of conference committees,” are held and a compromise effected. Thus each house acts as a check on the other. Thus each, reviewing the work of the other, tends to produce better legislation ; and while there are often delays which are irksome to the public, and while legislation is often produced which falls short of the popular desire, yet the results are generally satisfactory and the delays are counterbalanced by freedom from radical measures, a characteristic which has marked our national legislation during more than a hundred years.

#### 4. *LEGISLATIVE POWERS.*

**General Limitation.**—The fear of a strong central government and the desire to retain all possible powers in the several States were marked political characteristics of the people at the time of the Constitutional Convention. During its entire session the local powers of the States were jealously guarded, and only those were granted to the national government which were general in character, and such as could not be properly administered by the States themselves. Even then the people were fearful of the new government, and among the early amendments added to the Constitution was one which provided that:

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people. (Amendment X.)

**Constitutionality.**—It was intended by this amendment to place beyond contradiction the fact that the United



States Government was not one of original powers, but possessed merely those which the Constitution delegated to it. Hence, in considering any question of national legislation or action, the inquiry, "Is it constitutional?" means is there in the Constitution any provision which, under reasonable interpretation, gives the Government authority for the act. From the time of the First Congress every act of legislation has been subjected to this test, and the differences of opinion upon these questions have generally marked the two great political parties of the country—the one, termed "Loose Constructionists," insisting that the Constitution granted not only the powers expressly stated, but all others that could reasonably be inferred from it; the other, called "Strict Constructionists," denying the existence of any implied authority and insisting upon a literal interpretation of the Constitution.

**Taxation.**—The weakness of the confederacy showed the framers of the Constitution the necessity of extensive and strong powers in the general government. They were familiar with the inability of the confederacy to enforce its requisitions for money and with its resulting helplessness. They felt that there was no more important function of government than that of levying and collecting taxes; for however vast the resources, however extensive the boundaries, however patriotic the citizens, the Government was powerless if it could not compel the use of these resources for its support. They, therefore, provided that:

The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common



defense and general welfare of the United States; . . . (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 1.)

Of this power, Chief Justice Chase said:

To the existence of the States and to the existence of the United States the power of taxation is indispensable. It is an essential function of government. It was exercised by the colonies and by the states formed therefrom. Under the Articles of Confederation the Government was limited in the exercise of this power to requisitions upon the States. The Constitution changed this condition of things. It gave the power to tax directly and indirectly to the national government.

**Direct Taxes.**—A *direct tax* is defined by Mill as a charge “which is demanded from the very persons who, it is intended or desired, should pay it.” Such taxes are poll or capitation tax, imposed upon individuals at so much a person (literally, “per head”), charges upon lands, personal property, incomes, and the rents and profits of property. In the levying of such direct taxes provision was made that no State should bear more than its share of the burden.

Direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States . . . according to their respective numbers. (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 3.)

No capitation, or other direct, tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken. (Art. I., Sec. 9, Cl. 4.)

When a direct tax is laid, the amount of money to be raised is first ascertained, and the tax is apportioned among the States according to their population at the last census.

**Indirect Taxes.**—*Indirect taxes* are defined as “those

which are demanded from one person in the expectation and intention that he shall indemnify himself at the expense of others.” Such taxes are duties or imposts, imposed upon the importation of goods, and excises, an inland tax levied upon the manufacture or sale of certain articles and upon licenses to pursue certain trades or to deal in certain commodities. In the levying of such indirect taxes it was provided that they should “be uniform throughout the United States” (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 1). By “uniform” is meant that such taxes shall be the same in one State as in another, regardless of population, a characteristic in which they differ from direct taxes. But all articles need not be taxed alike. Thus tobacco may be taxed at one rate, silk at another, while other commodities may be under very different charges, but the charge on each class of articles is the same everywhere.

**The Tariff.**—Duties and imposts, also called “customs,” are charges made upon imports, and are of two kinds—*specific* and *ad valorem*. A *specific* duty is a certain sum charged on each article, regardless of its cost or value, as so much per pound, gallon or yard. An *ad valorem* duty is a charge made at a certain percentage of the cost or value of the article. The list of dutiable goods, with the prescribed charges, is called the “tariff.” About the levying of duties and imposts have centered some of the fiercest political struggles of this country; and the character and purpose of the duties imposed have in several campaigns marked the division of the great parties. Civics is not the place to enter into a discussion of the economic features of the subject of duties. That belongs to the study of Political Economy. It will be sufficient

for the present to know that in the division of sentiment caused by this subject there is one party whose members are known as “Protectionists,” who insist that under the implied powers of the Constitution the Government has the right to impose duties and imposts, not only to supply revenue for its support, but also to encourage and foster manufacturing and other industries in the country, and for this purpose to raise the charges so high as practically to prohibit the importation of goods. Opposed to this party are the so-called “Free-Traders,” who advocate the collection of duties for the support of the Government, but deny that they can be constitutionally imposed for any other purpose.

A modification of “protection” is the reduction of duties upon imports from a country in return for a similar reduction by it upon American goods. This is termed “reciprocity,” and is established by treaty (page 132). The converse, called “retaliation,” is the increase of duties upon imports from a country which has increased its duties upon American articles. This is done by the President, to whom the power is usually given by Congress.

**Collection of Duties.**—In order to collect these duties certain places along the coasts and borders of the country are designated as *Ports of Entry*, where are government buildings called *Custom Houses*, in charge of officers known as *Collectors of Customs*. At these places cargoes are examined by the Collector or his agents, called *Inspectors*, and duties are computed and collected upon importations according to the schedules fixed by law. Dutiable articles constitute a long list, and consist of so-called

luxuries, as diamonds, works of art, silks and the like ; certain necessities, as clothing ; and a large number of other articles, “ raw ” and manufactured.

**Internal Revenue.**—Excises constitute what is known as the *internal revenue* of the country, and are taxes levied upon the manufacture and sale of liquors and tobaccos, and frequently upon other articles, such as telegrams and legal and commercial papers, upon which have to be affixed revenue stamps varying in value from a fraction of a cent to many dollars. Matters pertaining to the sale of these stamps and the collection of this revenue are in the charge of government officers called *Collectors of Internal Revenue*.

**The National Income.**—These taxes, direct and indirect, constitute the sources of the national income. The receipts are nearly always sufficient for the demands of the Government, and at times have been so large as to rapidly diminish the great debts incurred in the several wars in which we have been engaged. Indeed, so great have been the indirect revenues that, except in a very few instances, no direct taxes have ever been levied.\*

**Commerce.**—Intimately connected with this power of Congress is that “ to regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the In-

\* The principal direct taxes levied by the general government were the following : July 14, 1798, two millions of dollars ; January 9, 1815, six millions of dollars ; August 5, 1861, twenty millions of dollars, to be levied annually thereafter. In the latter case the taxes were not collected by officers of the United States, but each State paid its portion from the moneys in the State treasury. This tax was collected but once, and the act was suspended. In 1891 the United States refunded to the States the sums which they had paid on the tax of 1861.



dian tribes ” (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 3). “Commerce,” as here used, means not only trade, but also intercourse and navigation. Before the Constitution all such laws were enacted by the States, and the greatest confusion resulted. But because the regulation of commerce was a matter of general interest, and for the purpose of uniformity, it was delegated wholly to the general government. Under this section Congress has power to appropriate moneys to render navigation less dangerous, to build lighthouses, to provide life-saving stations, improve harbors, dredge rivers, establish quarantine regulations, license and require the employment of licensed pilots, make surveys of the coasts, issue charts and maps, and perform many other acts of a similar nature.

**Shipping Regulations.**—By virtue of this power Congress has made regulations requiring American-owned vessels to be *registered*, an act which accords to such vessels privileges not extended to foreign ships, such as to engage in the coasting trade and to be protected by the Government if seized or injured by a foreign power. So, also, a vessel upon leaving port is required to take out a certificate called a *clearance*, issued by the collector of customs, showing that all harbor fees have been paid and regulations observed. Upon arrival at an American port, a further regulation requires a vessel to be *entered*—that is, to report to the collector, present a statement of its cargo and deliver the clearance which it received from the last port. This last, however, is not generally required of American vessels engaged in the coasting trade. All other laws relative to the merchant marine of the nation rest upon this section.

**Interstate Commerce.**—Under this section laws have also been passed controlling railroads whose business is conducted in two or more States, prescribing rules for their management, construction and rates for freight. And, finally, it is from this section that Congress derives its authority to regulate all intercourse and traffic with the Indians.

**Federal Taxes and State Taxes.**—The power to levy duties and imposts and to regulate commerce belongs peculiarly to Congress, for it is provided that:

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; . . .  
(Art. I., Sec. 10, Cl. 2.)

And the Supreme Court of the United States has held that the right to regulate commerce is “exclusively vested in Congress and cannot be exercised by a State.” This is not true of the right to levy direct taxes. This right is co-existent in state and national governments, and the exercise of it by Congress does not preclude a State from taxing the same property, though the claims of the general government are superior; and if there is not sufficient property to satisfy the demands of both governments, that of the nation has preference.

**Restrictions on Taxation.**—It should be observed that the purposes for which Congress is thus given the power to tax are “to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States” (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 1). The courts have held that taxation purely in aid of personal or private objects is beyond

legislative power, and that Congress cannot even raise a tax for purposes which are within the exclusive jurisdiction of a State.

There is another restriction upon this power of Congress. That is, that "no tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State" (Art. I., Sec. 9, Cl. 5). The reason for this provision is that the extent of the country is so great and its resources so varied that a uniform burden of export duties would be practically impossible, and the interests of the various States would be constantly demanding recognition, which would destroy trade stability and result in the greatest confusion. Furthermore, such taxation would tend to impede the growth of industries by making the charges upon their products so high as to render competition in a foreign market impossible. Uniformity in commercial regulations is assured by the provision that:

No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another ; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another. (Art. I., Sec. 9, Cl. 6.)

**Power to Borrow.**—The revenues just considered are adequate in times of peace and usual prosperity. But there arise conditions when these are insufficient. The Civil War created such a condition. So, also, a crisis may arise when the revenues are depleted and time will not permit the collection of sufficient taxes to prevent national embarrassment. To provide against such an emergency, Congress can "borrow money on the credit of the United States" (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 2).

This is a very important provision. Chief Justice Marshall said:

No provision can be selected which is of more vital interest to the community . . . No power has been conferred by the American people on the government, the free exercise of which more deeply affects every member of our republic. In war, when the honor, safety and independence of the nation are to be defended, when all its resources are to be strained to the utmost, credit must be brought in aid of taxation, and the abundant revenues of peace and prosperity must be anticipated to supply the exigencies of the moment.

**Coinage; Weights and Measures.**—An important power of Congress is the one:

To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standards of weights and measures. (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 5.)

The trading instinct has made necessary some medium of exchange. For this the precious metals have been found the most practicable, and gold and silver are now generally used, with nickel and copper for small values. At first these media passed by weight ; later they were made into coins—that is, stamped into shape and marked with some device significant of their value. This, however, was not an absolute guaranty of value, and so governments took upon themselves the power to coin money, and the stamp affixed to a coin is a pledge by the government that the value of the coin is what it purports to be.

**Monetary System.**—At the time of the adoption of the Constitution there was no fixed monetary system in the country. Spanish milled dollars, English shillings and other foreign coins were in common circulation. The



need of a uniform system was evident. This could not be obtained by leaving it to the States, for each might adopt a different standard of weight or purity. So the right to coin money was granted to Congress, together with the power to regulate the value of foreign coins in exchange for those of this country. Uniformity resulted. The dollar is the same in all sections of the country, and trade is carried on freely without the necessity of testing the purity or weight of coins. The Government does its coining in buildings called *mints*, of which there are several, in different cities. The principal one is at Philadelphia, Pa.

**Systems of Weights and Measures.**—Although uniformity in weights and measures is within the power of Congress, it has never exercised this power beyond adopting for the use of custom houses the English system, and legalizing the use of the metric system. The English system is in general use throughout the country, each State government compelling the instruments used within its jurisdiction to conform to standards furnished by the general government. In scientific work, however, the metric system is largely in use, and there is a growing opinion that for the sake of international trade it should be made the standard of the country.

**Counterfeiting.**—The power of Congress over the money of the country would be practically useless were it not connected with another power:

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States. (Art I., Sec. 8, Cl. 6.)

To *counterfeit* is “to copy or imitate without authority

or right, and with a view to deceive or defraud by passing the copy for the original or genuine." It is counterfeiting even to issue a coin of equal weight and purity with that of the Government. Under the power to borrow money there have been issued from time to time bonds or promises of the Government to pay certain sums of money at certain times. These, and the paper currency of the Government, which is constantly in circulation, constitute the securities of the United States. Besides these, there are postal and internal revenue stamps. The chief value of all these depends upon their genuineness, and it was to prevent their imitation that this power was given to Congress. Counterfeiting has, therefore, been declared a crime, and severe punishments are prescribed for those detected in it. Nor is this all. The crime is considered twofold, as against the Government and as against the people, for the punishment of which latter offense the several States have also enacted laws.

**Postal Service.**—Congress has power "to establish post-offices and post-roads" (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 7). In the exercise of this power the Government comes in direct contact with the greatest number of people. The handling of the mails is a matter too extensive to be conducted satisfactorily by private enterprise. Formerly communications were carried by slaves or other messengers ; but the development of trade, necessitating prompt and safe transmission of mails, demanded a cheap and certain postal service available to the general public. This could best be obtained by giving its control to the federal government. At the time of the Constitutional Convention this power was not deemed of particular consequence.

Madison spoke of it as “a harmless power which may, perhaps, by judicious management become productive of great public convenience.” At that time, however, it took four weeks to send a letter from Philadelphia to Boston and receive a reply, and the rate of postage was six cents for any distance less than thirty miles, with a maximum charge of twenty-five cents for a distance exceeding four hundred and fifty miles.

This provision includes the power to designate the various classes of mail matter and fix the rates of postage, to provide for the transmission of money by post, and through treaties with other nations arrange for the forwarding of mails to any part of the civilized world. Through its extension every hamlet has been provided with a post-office, while in cities and many rural sections there is a free collection and delivery of mail. All roads within a State, including railroads, canals and rivers, become by law “post-roads” when the mail is transported over them, and whatever may be the obstruction to ordinary traffic, whatever mobs may do to impede the passage of trains, free progress is given to the stage or train which carries the United States mail. For some officers of the Government in the conduct of official business the mail is carried free. This is called a *frank* or *franking privilege*; and severe penalties are imposed upon any one using a frank for other than official business. Congress has also made laws to prevent the sending through the mails of explosives, poisonous insects and reptiles; publications, pictures and communications of an immoral character; and other similar abuses of the postal service.

**Patents and Copyrights.**—Another power given to Congress is:

To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries. (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 8.)

This is exercised by the granting of letters patent and copyrights. The idea embodied in this provision arose from a desire to encourage invention and research, on the theory that it would increase the general welfare of the country. If new inventions became at once free to the world, it was seen that men would not spend the time necessary to their perfection, and the development of the arts would be impeded. But to give them the exclusive and unending benefit of their discoveries and inventions was deemed unwise, since it would create a perpetual monopoly. Therefore the privilege was limited.

**Letters Patent.**—*Letters patent* are official documents granting to the recipient or his representatives the sole right for the period of seventeen years to make, use and sell, within the United States and its territories, an article invented or discovered by him. A person making an invention can either obtain a patent at once, or, if he desires further time to perfect his work, can protect himself for the period of one year by taking out a *caveat*. This is done by filing in the Patent Office at Washington a description of his invention. If, however, he desires a patent, he must make application in writing to the Commissioner of Patents at Washington, fully describing his invention and its purpose, with a claim as to its novelty. Oftentimes a model is required to be sent with the



application, and if the invention or discovery is a compound or composition of matter, the applicant may be required to furnish specimens of the ingredients sufficient for an experiment. If, after examination, it appears that the invention is novel or new, a patent will be issued.

**Copyrights.**—A *copyright* is an exclusive privilege granted to a person or his representatives for the period of twenty-eight years, with the privilege of renewal to himself or his widow or children for the further term of fourteen years, to print, publish, make or sell some literary or artistic production. Copyrights are issued upon books, maps, musical and dramatic compositions, paintings, engravings, photographs, statuary, designs and numerous other productions. In order to procure a copyright the applicant must, before publication, deliver or mail to the Librarian of Congress at Washington a printed copy of the title page of the book or description of the article, upon which an entry of the copyright is made in the official records. Within ten days after the publication he must also deliver to the Librarian of Congress two copies of the book or composition; or if a painting, engraving, statue or design, a photograph thereof. To protect himself in his production he is required to print on the title page of the book or the one next following, or upon some conspicuous place on his map, design, picture or other article, the following: “Entered according to act of Congress in the year [date] by [name] in the office of the Librarian of Congress,” or the words, “Copyright [date] by [name].”

**Infringements.**—The issuance of a patent or a copyright is not an absolute guaranty by the Government of the

rights described in it. For if there has been a prior patent or copyright which covers the same invention or publication, the subsequent patentee or holder of the copyright obtains no right to manufacture, publish or sell the invention or publication, and in case he does so, he is liable to a prosecution for infringement in the United States courts, and the payment of damages.

**Exterritorial Power.**—Power is also given to Congress to

define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations. (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 10.)

PIRACY is defined as “robbery or forcible depredation on the high seas without lawful authority.” On land the crime of highway robbery corresponds to it.

HIGH SEA is the uninclosed portion of the ocean, three miles outside of the general line of the coast. A *felony* is a crime of a high order whose punishment is death or long imprisonment.

LAW OF NATIONS is the system of justice recognized by civilized nations as that which ought to control their intercourse with each other.

The provision relating to offenses against the Law of Nations has been judicially held to apply to offenses on the high seas, but the language of the Constitution would seem to bear a broader interpretation.

This power was given to Congress because such matters were beyond the control of the several States, and because in our relations with other nations the national government is held responsible for all infringements of their rights or those of their subjects; and unless power resided in the Government to punish such offenses, frequent controversies would result and become a constant menace to our peaceful relations.

For the purpose of supplying courts for the trial of piracies and other crimes in violation of the United States statutes, Congress was authorized “to constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court” (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 9). Of these courts and their jurisdiction mention will be made in a later chapter. (See pages 159, 165.)

**Citizenship.**—One of the perplexing questions during our national life has been that relating to citizenship. For many years it was generally maintained that there was no such distinctive character as that of “a citizen of the United States.” The title “citizen of a State” was long recognized, and as such a person was considered a citizen of the United States. But this excepted from citizenship all residents of the Territories and the District of Columbia, these not being States. This question was removed by the adoption of Amendment XIV., which provided that:

All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. (Sec. 1.)

Citizenship implies correlative obligations; that is, allegiance, or fidelity and obedience on the part of the citizen, and protection on the part of the Government. Thus a citizen of the United States owes to the Government certain duties, as sharing in its defense and support and aiding in the execution of its laws. Since in our relations with foreign powers we are not recognized as individual States, but as a nation, an American citizen is everywhere entitled to demand the support and protection of the full power of the United States.

**Determination of Citizenship.**—Citizenship is determined in two ways. First, all persons are citizens who are born within the United States and subject to its jurisdiction. This provision includes people of all races and of both sexes, except Indians. It also includes children of Americans who at the time of their birth are temporarily without the country, but it does not include children of foreign representatives or travelers born when the parents are temporarily residing within the United States. Second, all persons are citizens who are naturalized within the United States. Naturalization is restricted by law to persons of the white and black races, and Japanese, Chinese and others are excluded.

**Naturalization.**—*Naturalization* is the process by which a citizen or subject of a foreign nation is made a citizen of the United States. The only privilege of a native-born citizen which a naturalized citizen does not possess is that the former is qualified to become President or Vice-President of the United States. It may be observed that citizenship and the right of suffrage are separate and distinct rights. The first is granted by the general government, the latter by the States. Citizenship does not depend upon age or sex, two conditions which generally determine the right to vote.

**Rules of Naturalization.**—For the purpose of conferring citizenship, Congress is empowered “to establish an uniform rule of naturalization” (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 4). This rule is briefly as follows:

A foreigner, residing within this country, known as an *alien*, is required :

1. To declare on oath before a Circuit or District Court of the



United States, or a Court of Record of a State, two years prior to his naturalization, that it is his intention to become a citizen and that he renounces allegiance to every foreign state.

2. He must at the same time swear to support the Constitution of the United States.

3. After a residence of five years within the country and at least two years after declaring his intention, the alien may be fully admitted to citizenship by presenting to one of the above-mentioned courts proof of the declaration of his intention, of his residence within the country for five years and within the State for one year, and of a good moral character ; and

4. He must, at such time and place, renounce any title or order of nobility which he may possess.

The Court, if satisfied, then makes an order declaring him to be a citizen, and there is issued to the applicant a certificate to that effect, which is in every place evidence of his citizenship. This rule applies to both males and females, but there are certain exceptions in the case of aliens not more than eighteen years of age at the time of their arrival in this country, and a further exception which extends citizenship to all children who are minors at the time of the parent's naturalization.

**Rights of Citizens.**—We have seen the privileges attending citizenship in our relations with foreign powers. There are also domestic privileges.

The citizen of each State shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States. (Art. IV., Sec. 2, Cl. 1.)

A person removing from one State to another is entitled in his new home to all the rights—social, civil and religious—that he would have possessed had he been born there. But as he takes up these new rights, he must relinquish those of his old home. To illustrate: In Kansas, women can vote. In New York they cannot. If a New York woman should remove to Kansas, she would there

be entitled to the right of suffrage. But if a Kansas woman removed to New York, she would not be permitted to vote in the latter State. This principle applies to all relations of life. No State can make laws or grant rights that extend beyond its borders. Nor can it establish rules to prevent people from coming there to live, nor impose upon such new-comers restrictions which are not equally binding upon its own citizens. Lest, however, any question should ever arise, particularly in reference to the freedmen, there was inserted in Amendment XIV. the provision that:

No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States ;  
. . . (Sec. 1.)

**National Bankruptcy Laws.**—Another important power of Congress is to establish

uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States. (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 4.)

It is a fundamental principle of business that all men should pay their just debts. In no other way can trade be conducted with profit and security. Yet there come times when under strained financial conditions honest men throughout the country cannot meet their obligations. Pressure by ordinary legal methods would not be able to force collections, but would cause great hardships, and oftentimes discouragement, to the debtor, a condition injurious both in business and civil relations. It has therefore been deemed expedient from time to time to relieve debtors under certain conditions by compelling

creditors to receive all a debtor's property in full satisfaction of his debts, even though much less in amount, thus reëstablishing credit and encouraging worthy men in their quest for wealth. Such laws existed in Greece and Rome; England has had them for many years; and before the Revolutionary War bankruptcy laws existed at various times in several of the colonies. In our own national history there have been four acts of this character—in 1800, 1841, 1867, and the present one, which went into effect July 1, 1898.

A **BANKRUPTCY LAW** is one which discharges a debtor from liability for past debts upon the surrender by him of all his property for the benefit of his creditors.

AN **INSOLVENT** is a person whose property, other than that concealed or transferred to defraud creditors, is not sufficient at a fair valuation to pay his debts.

A **BANKRUPT** is such a person, when so declared by the courts, after surrendering his property to be applied upon his debts.

**PROCEEDINGS IN BANKRUPTCY:** Bankruptcy is either voluntary or involuntary; that is, the insolvent may file a petition with the court giving a complete list of his property, a statement of his debts, to whom owed, and his inability to pay them and asking to be adjudged a bankrupt; or creditors of an insolvent may file such a petition, in which they set forth the financial condition of the insolvent and the performance by him of certain so-called "acts of bankruptcy," such as secreting his property with the intent to defraud his creditors, and ask that he be adjudged a bankrupt. These petitions must be under oath. After an investigation into the facts presented by the petition, the court may or may not adjudge the person a bankrupt. If it does, the creditors are allowed to prove their claims against him, and usually a trustee of his property is appointed, who, under the direction of the court, takes charge of the bankrupt's property, collects and reduces it to money, and distributes it in the following manner—to pay:

1. Taxes due to the United States, State, county, town or city.
2. Costs of the proceedings.
3. Wages to workmen.
4. Debts.

After such distribution, and within twelve months after he has been declared a bankrupt, the court, if satisfied of his honesty and good conduct, may order his discharge from bankruptcy, after which he may begin again the acquisition of property without fear of its being taken to satisfy his former obligations.

**State Bankruptcy Laws.**—The power to enact bankruptcy laws is not exclusively vested in Congress. From time to time States have passed such laws, and it has been held by the courts that they are constitutional except when the power is actually being exercised by Congress, or the State laws conflict with those of the national government.

**Military Powers.**—One of the experiences common to all nations is war. In 1787 we were but recently through with the Revolution, and the necessity of war powers in the general government was very evident. Under the Articles of Confederation, Congress had the right to make requisitions of men upon the several States, but no power to enforce them. Such a system was inherently weak, and might have resulted in disaster had it not been for the patriotism of the people. To remedy this defect, and to take war powers away from the several States, whose hasty action might involve the whole country in conflict, Congress was given power:

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water; [For definition of *letters of marque and reprisal*, see page 196.]

To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

To provide and maintain a navy;

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;



To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress. (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16.)

**Army.**—Incident to the power to declare war, and necessary to give it effect, is the power to raise and support armies. This includes the raising of troops by enlistment (voluntary enrollment) or by conscription (forced enrollment), the determination of their number and service, purchase of supplies and arms, construction of fortifications, arsenals, barracks and hospitals, instruction of officers and men in schools and otherwise, and the performance of any other acts necessary to organize efficient armies. But, mindful of the powers which armies had assumed in the past and fearful of their repetition, there was added the provision that appropriations should not be made for a longer term than two years. Money is a necessity for an army. Without power of acquiring property, it is dependent for its support upon the people, and they, under this provision, through their representatives, can control its existence by granting or refusing to grant supplies.

**Navy.**—The power to provide a navy was necessary on account of our extended seacoast and the ambition of the people to engage in commerce. This power includes the enrollment of seamen, the construction of vessels, the establishment of navy yards and docks, the purchase of supplies and munitions, the instruction of officers and

men in schools or otherwise, and the performance of any other acts necessary to make an efficient navy.

**The Military Law.**—As the army and navy are created by the general government, Congress was given the power to make regulations for their government. This has been done by the enactment of a code of rules, called the “Military Law,” which prescribes tactics and arrangement of troops, classifies officers and men, regulates the pay of the service, defines military and naval offenses, and provides for the punishment of offenders by the creation of tribunals called “courts-martial” and by the establishment of their jurisdiction and procedure.

**Militia.**—There has always been in this country a fear of a large standing army—that is, a disciplined body of men whose sole occupation is military service—and it has been the policy of the Government to maintain only a small military force to do police duty among the Indians and guard the frontiers. If a greater force was needed, it was believed that the best defenders of the country were its citizens who have homes and property to protect. So the main reliance of the country has been upon its militia, which is defined as consisting, with a few exceptions, of “every able-bodied male citizen of the respective States who is of the age of eighteen years and under the age of forty-five years.” And this body Congress was given power to call out—to execute the laws of the United States, to suppress insurrections and to repel invasions. By virtue of this provision Congress has conferred upon the President power to summon the militia, which then becomes a part of the military force of the United States and subject to the regulations of the Military Law.

**Organization of Militia.**—Such a force, composed of men engaged in civil pursuits, would be useless unless armed and trained ; so to Congress was given the power, which it has exercised in various ways, of preparing the people for military duty, particularly by the establishment of uniform tactics and rules for drills and instruction, which action has been further extended by the States. Profiting by the experience of the Revolution, in which the militia often refused to obey officers other than those from their own States, it was provided that the appointment of the regimental officers of the militia should be left entirely to the several States.

**Federal Territory.**—Congress had not always held its meetings at the same place, but had met at various cities. This made the Government dependent for support and protection upon the State in which it met. These were not always afforded, as when on an occasion Congress was forced to adjourn its sitting at Philadelphia and continue it at Princeton (June 21, 1783). To the end that the Government might have a permanent seat, the State of Maryland granted to it a tract of land on the northern bank of the Potomac, known as the District of Columbia, in which is the capital city, where are located the Capitol, the official residence of the President, known as the “ White House,” and the offices of the various departments of the Government. Besides this tract there are various places throughout the country where Congress has purchased lands and erected arsenals, navy yards, military posts, forts and other buildings needful for the conduct of the government. Over all these places Congress has exclusive jurisdiction. For it was given power:



To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings. (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 17.)

This jurisdiction must be recognized by the State in its cession, otherwise it does not exist. The inhabitants of such places cease to be citizens of the State, but retain their United States citizenship.

**General Powers.**—The foregoing are, in the main, the specific powers granted to Congress. Other grants will be found in other sections of the Constitution, and they will be considered in their proper places. These powers contain in themselves the right to employ all means necessary to their execution. It has been said:

However government is constituted, infinitely the greater part of it must depend on the exercise of powers which are left at large to the prudence and uprightness of ministers of state.

It was not practicable to enumerate all the means which Congress might employ in the exercise of its powers. But to satisfy any doubt, it was provided that Congress should have power:

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof. (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 18.)

**Implied Powers.**—About these powers have been waged many fierce political conflicts ; and upon the laws enacted



under them have arisen some of the most noted legal questions of our history. The courts have decided in favor of the existence of broad powers in Congress, and some of the most radical legislation of the country has been enacted and sustained under such decisions. Thus, under the provision granting the power to borrow money, it has been held that Congress could establish national banks, a large part of whose capital must be invested in national securities, by which a demand for them is created and governmental borrowing is made easier. So, also, to carry out the various enumerated powers, the courts have declared that Congress could enact laws incorporating railroads, purchasing foreign territory, making United States notes legal tender, establishing a protective tariff and performing many other acts broader and more important than those authorized by express provision.

POWERS OF CONGRESS.

Civil.

<i>Raise revenue</i>	{	Taxation	{	Direct	{	Capitation.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
				Indirect		Land.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
						{	Personal property.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
							{	Duties on imports { Specific.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																										
{	{	{	{	Ad valorem.	Excises.																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																													
<i>Regulate commerce</i>	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{

<i>Maintain business stability</i>	{	Coinage	{	Minting.	{	Foreign.	
				Regulation of coin values		Domestic.	
	{	Weights and measures.					
		Bankruptcy laws.					
<i>Regulate postal service</i>	{	Foreign	{	Carriage of mails.	{		
				Postage.			
	{	Domestic	{	Post-offices.	{		
				Post-roads.			
Postage.							
<i>Encourage science and useful arts</i>	{	Patents	{	Caveat.	{		
				Letters patent.			
		{	Copyrights.				
<i>Define crimes</i>	{		Exterri- torial	{	Piracy.	{	
		Felonies on the high seas.					
		Crimes against the law of nations.					
	{	Territorial—Counterfeiting					{
					{	Securities.	
<i>Regulate citizenship</i>	{	By defining citizenship.					
		By naturalization.					
<i>Govern territory</i> (obtained from States)	{	For seat of government (less than 10 miles square).					
		For forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards and other buildings.					

**Military.***Declare war.**Grant letters of marque and reprisal.*

<i>Make rules as to captures</i>	{	On land.
	{	At sea.

<i>Raise and support armies</i>	{	And make rules for governing
<i>Build and maintain a navy</i>	{	

<i>Organize and call</i>	{	Execute federal laws.
<i>out militia</i>	{	Suppress insurrections.
	{	Repel invasions.

**5. LEGISLATIVE PROHIBITIONS.**

**Divisions.**—Besides the granting of powers, certain legislative prohibitions were imposed by the Constitution.

These prohibitions, with the exception of those contained in the Amendments, are found in the ninth and tenth sections of Article I. They may be divided into three classes: (1) Those relating to the federal government only. (2) Those which apply to both federal and state governments. (3) Those relating to the States only.

Some of these have been already considered, as Section 9, Clauses 4, 5 and 6, and Section 10, Clause 2. (See pages 82, 87 and 88.)

#### (1) THE PROHIBITIONS UPON THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT.

**Slavery.**—The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person. (Art. I., Sec. 9, Cl. 1.)

This provision was the result of a compromise in the Constitutional Convention between the delegates of those States favoring slavery and those in which the system was already prohibited or was fast dying out. Its importance passed away with the extinction of slavery by the Civil War.

**Habeas Corpus.**—The privileges of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it. (Art. I., Sec. 9, Cl. 2.)

This right, as we have seen (page 22), was established early in the growth of English institutions. The power to suspend it had, in the past, been much abused by tyrannical rulers, and it was to avoid such misuse by this Government that the provision was enacted, which did not

entirely destroy the power of suspension, but limited it to times of extreme necessity.

**Direct Taxes.**—No capitation, or other direct, tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken. (Art. I., Sec. 9, Cl. 4. See page 82.)

**Appropriations.**—No money shall be drawn, from the Treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time. (Art. I., Sec. 9, Cl. 7.)

An *appropriation* is an act providing for the expenditure of a certain sum of money to be drawn from the treasury, and stating the purpose for which it shall be expended. It has been seen that Congress possesses the power of taxation. It follows that this branch of the government should disburse the funds so raised, for Congress directly represents the taxpayers. This prohibition is particularly a restriction upon the Executive Branch.

**Preferred Ports.**—No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another. (Art. I., Sec. 9, Cl. 6. See page 88.)

## (2) THE PROHIBITIONS APPLICABLE TO BOTH THE UNITED STATES AND STATES.

**Bills of Attainder and Ex Post Facto Laws.**—No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed. (Art. I., Sec. 9, Cl. 3.)

No State shall . . . pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, . . . (Art. I., Sec. 10, Cl. 1.)

A *bill of attainder* is a legislative act which imposes a



punishment without a judicial trial. If the punishment be less than death, the act is termed a *bill of pains and penalties*. Within the meaning of the Constitution, bills of attainder include bills of pains and penalties.

Formerly bills of attainder were extensively used to overawe the people and keep them in subjection. The struggles incident to the rise of English liberties were marked by many examples of their arbitrary use, particularly the "Great Act of Attainder" of 1688, which comprised a list of over two thousand persons. The chief severity of the punishment in such cases was that the condemned person was rendered incapable of inheriting property from an ancestor or of transmitting it to his children.

Bills of attainder are unjust in the highest degree, in that they deprive men of life, liberty or property without a trial, and often without proof of guilt or the opportunity of defense. In an early case a justice of the Supreme Court said:

It [this prohibition] very probably arose from the knowledge that the Parliament of Great Britain claimed and exercised the power to pass such laws, . . . The ground for the exercise of such legislative power was this, that the safety of the kingdom depended on the death, or other punishment, of the offender. With few exceptions, the advocates of such laws were stimulated by ambition or personal resentment and malice. To prevent such and similar acts of violence and injustice, I believe the federal and state legislatures were prohibited from passing any bill of attainder.

An *ex post facto law* is a criminal law. It is defined by the Supreme Court of the United States as:

Every law that makes an action done before the passage of the law, and which was innocent when done, criminal and punishes such action;

Every law that aggravates a crime, or makes it greater than it was when committed;

Every law that changes the punishment and inflicts a greater punishment than the law annexed to the crime when committed;

Every law that alters the legal rules of evidence and receives less or different testimony than the law required at the time of the commission of the offense, in order to convict the offender.

Such laws are manifestly unjust and oppressive. For with the possibility of their enactment no man is secure in his life, his liberty or his property. The most innocent act of to-day may by the law of to-morrow be declared a grave offense and be visited with extreme punishment. Chief Justice Marshall has said:

The legislature is prohibited from passing a law by which a man's estate or any part of it shall be seized for a crime which was not declared by some provision of law, to render him liable to that punishment.

**Titles of Nobility.**—No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign State. (Art. I., Sec. 9, Cl. 8.)

No State shall . . . grant any title of nobility. (Art. I., Sec. 10, Cl. 1.)

Nobility is an adjunct of royalty, and titles create class distinction, which is contrary to the provision of the Declaration of Independence, which declares that "all men are created free and equal," and is antagonistic to the institutions of a republic, which depends for its life upon the absolute equality of all the people.

In the same spirit is that part of the prohibition relative to officers of the government. The duty to the Government should be paramount to all others. Oftentimes

the prosperity, if not the very existence, of the nation depends upon the loyalty of its representatives and officers. To guarantee fidelity to this trust, the provision was made so as to prevent them from being bribed and their official acts influenced by foreign states. From time to time various nations and rulers have made presents to our presidents and other officials, but these have been surrendered to the Government, and are preserved in the National Museum at Washington.

### (3) THE PROHIBITIONS UPON THE STATES.

**Miscellaneous.**—No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts ; pass any . . . law impairing the obligation of contracts, . . . (Art. I., Sec. 10, Cl. 1.)

For the purpose of establishing uniformity in our foreign relations, the several States surrendered to the general government all their sovereign rights and powers in external affairs. If the States were permitted to make treaties and alliances, it would result in danger to the Union, since they might enter into agreements which would be antagonistic to the interests not only of other States, but of the nation at large. Or, if a State were allowed to issue letters of marque and reprisal, it might involve all others in war. The prohibition against State coinage rests on much the same principle, for to permit it would destroy the very uniformity in our currency which we have seen to be necessary to its usefulness.

**Bills of Credit.**—*Bills of credit* are paper issued by a government, in which it promises to pay at some future



time certain sums of money to the persons holding it. During the Revolutionary War they were issued in vast quantity and circulated as money among the people. Not being paid when due, they rapidly depreciated in value, till they became practically worthless. As a result great financial losses followed, and public and private credit was destroyed. This prohibition was inserted to avoid a recurrence of such evils. Bills of credit must not be confounded with *state bonds*, which are contracts on the part of the State to pay for services rendered to it or for money borrowed for present use. "They are," says Chief Justice Marshall, "paper intended to circulate through the community, for its ordinary purposes, as money." The provision relating to tender in payment of debts was for the purpose of further avoiding the dangers of a debased currency.

**Contract Obligations.**—The provision restraining a State from passing any law impairing the obligations of contracts is of inestimable value, for it enters into every relation of life. The home, business, society are all affected by contract relations, for a *contract* is an agreement between two or more persons for a consideration to do or not to do some particular thing. It is therefore necessary to the security of human relations that an agreement once made should be undisturbed. Otherwise there would be no safety in trade or the affairs of life. Prior to the Constitution it was no uncommon occurrence for laws to be enacted without regard to their effect upon existing contracts. The insecurity thus occasioned was the cause of this provision, which extends not only to contracts between individuals, but also to those between the individ-



ual and the state. The extent of the prohibition was early decided by the Supreme Court in the celebrated Dartmouth College Case, which arose over an attempt by the legislature to alter the charter of the college. In a later case the same court said:

It has been decided that a contract entered into between a state and an individual is as fully protected by the tenth section of the first article of the Constitution as a contract between individuals.

**Commercial Regulations.**—No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress. (Art. I., Sec. 10, Cl. 2.)

No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage,\* keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay. (Art. I., Sec. 10, Cl. 3.)

The exercise of any of the powers prohibited by these clauses would so evidently conflict with those granted to Congress, or would be so liable to cause unjust discriminations by the States, resulting in endless confusion, if not serious complications, that no discussion seems necessary. A recital of the subjects is sufficient to show that they should be prohibited to states which are members of a union.

\* Tonnage duty is a charge upon ships based upon their capacity.

PROHIBITIONS.

Upon Federal Government.

- |   |   |                           |
|---|---|---------------------------|
| { | To prohibit the <i>Slave Trade</i> before 1808.                   |                           |
|   | To suspend the writ of <i>Habeas Corpus</i>                       | } Rebellion.<br>Invasion. |
|   | except in case of   |                           |
|   | To lay <i>Direct Taxes</i> except in proportion to census.        |                           |
|   | To levy export duties.  |                           |
|   | To <i>Draw Money</i> from treasury except as appropriated by law. |                           |
| { | To make <i>Preferred Ports</i> .                                  |                           |

Upon Federal and State Governments.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| { | To pass { <i>Bills of Attainder</i> . |
|   | <i>Ex Post Facto Laws</i> .           |
| { | To grant <i>Titles of Nobility</i> .  |

Upon State Governments.

- |                                     |   |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| Without<br>exception                | { | To enter into { Treaty.<br>Alliance.<br>Confederation.                |
|                                     |   | To grant letters of marque and reprisal.                              |
|                                     |   | To coin money.  |
|                                     |   | To emit bills of credit.  |
|                                     |   | To make anything legal tender except gold and silver coin.            |
|                                     |   | To pass laws impairing contract obligations.                          |
| Except by<br>consent of<br>Congress | { | To lay imposts and duties on { Imports.<br>Exports.                   |
|                                     |   | To lay duty on tonnage.   |
|                                     |   | To keep in time of peace { Troops.<br>Ships of war.                   |
|                                     |   | To enter into an { Another State.<br>agreement with { Foreign nation. |
|                                     |   | To engage in war unless { actually invaded.<br>in imminent danger.    |

6. PECULIAR POWERS OF SENATE AND HOUSE.

The Powers and Prohibitions which we have considered apply to *both* houses of Congress. There are, how-

ever, some rights and powers peculiar to each, such as the control of its own organization and members (Art. I., Sec. 5, Cl. 1 and 2), and certain others relating to the conduct of the government.

### HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES.

**Financial Bills.**—The most important right possessed by the House alone is that:

All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills. (Art. I., Sec. 7, Cl. 1.)

The spirit of this provision came from the English constitution. The growth of political power in the Commons had resulted from questions relating to taxation. The people, who paid, demanded the right to levy taxes. In 1407 the sole authority to originate money bills became fixed in the House of Commons. A question having arisen between the two houses, Henry IV. ordained that the Commons should “grant,” and the Lords “concur in,” appropriations of money, which should be reported to the king “by the mouth of the Speaker of the Commons.” Attempts were made by the Lords to encroach upon this power, which the Commons successfully resisted, even asserting that the Lords could not amend, but had only the right to consent to or reject the legislation. This limitation was in force in England at the time of the Constitutional Convention. Doubtless the success of the practice influenced the Convention in placing a similar provision in the Constitution, but the reasons for it are less apparent than in the English system. The

two houses of Congress do not represent different classes. Still, the constant renewal of the House by popular elections gives the people a nearer approach to legislation through that body than through the Senate, and they are able in a measure to control the demands made upon their resources. Legislative custom has further extended this exclusive right to the initiation of bills for general expenditures.

**Impeachment.**—“The House of Representatives . . . shall have the sole power of impeachment” (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 5). This, with the power of the Senate to try all cases of impeachment (Art. I., Sec. 3, Cl. 6), will be considered under the Judicial Branch of the government. (See page 156.)

#### SENATE.

**Executive Powers.**—The peculiar powers of the Senate, which consist in the exercise of certain executive functions, as confirmations of treaties and appointments, will be treated in connection with the Executive Branch. (See pages 129 and 131.)

### 7. THE PRESIDENT AND LEGISLATION.

**Relation to Congress.**—Before concluding the consideration of the Legislative Branch of the government, it remains to note the relation of the President to the law-making power. He is not a member of either house. Only in the case of a disagreement between them as to the time to which to adjourn can he interfere with their conduct (Art. II., Sec. 3). His character as a legislator resembles that of a third house. It has been said:



The President represents the people at large—the Nation; the Senate, the people in separate commonwealths—the States; the House of Representatives, the same people in small communities—Congressional Districts.

**Veto Power.**—Still, in his legislative capacity he cannot originate legislation. His power lies in his authority to check congressional action.

Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States ; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bills shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States ; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill (Art. I., Sec. 7, Cl. 2 and 3.)

This power of the President is called the “veto power,” and his neglect to sign a bill remaining in his hands after

the adjournment of Congress is called a "pocket veto." The veto power is somewhat monarchical in its character, and was derived from England, though an early and democratic form was exercised by the Roman tribunes. It is worthy of note that no English ruler has employed the veto since 1707, while it has been constantly exercised by the President, and has, in this country, prevented much harmful legislation. It is, however, not an absolute power, for it may be overridden by a sufficient majority in Congress, in which case the bill is said to be passed "over the President's veto"; but so great is the influence of the Executive that such action is rarely attempted and seldom successful.

## CHAPTER III.

### THE EXECUTIVE BRANCH.

#### 1. THE PRESIDENT AND VICE-PRESIDENT.

**Separate Executive.**—The Convention of 1787 adopted at the very outset the principle that the executive branch of the government should be separate and distinct from the legislative and judicial branches.

**Executive under the Confederation.**—A large part of the weakness of the Confederacy had been attributed to the cumbersome method of vesting all governmental powers in one representative body. But this was only a partial cause, for the executive powers granted by the Articles were so limited that they would not have been efficient even if exercised by a distinct department. The separation of the legislative and executive branches is not absolutely essential to a strong and stable government. The laws of Great Britain are to-day administered by a ministry which is, in fact, a committee chosen from the party having a majority in the House of Commons.

**Reason for a Separate Executive.**—In 1787 English writers and statesmen *believed* that the government of England possessed distinct branches, while in her American colonies such distinction had been *actual*. The delegates, therefore, familiar with this principle and believing

that the unity of powers under the Confederation had been a failure, deemed this separation necessary, and adopted it as the basis upon which to erect the new government.

**Difficulty of Organizing Branch.**—There was no subject more carefully discussed or in regard to which there was more diversity of opinion than the organization of the executive department. There was ample material in the governmental experience of the Confederacy for the construction of the legislative branch, but the executive powers to be granted presented a subject which caused much speculation, debate and the gravest anxiety.

**Number of Executive.**—The first step was to decide the number of persons who should constitute the executive. Arguments were advanced in favor of three persons with equal powers, and also in favor of a single executive. To the former proposition it was objected that any division of responsibility would induce corruption, that disagreements would delay and weaken executive action and that it was needless for this branch of government to be deliberative in character, as its sole duty was to enforce the laws. These objections, and the experience of most of the delegates in their state governments, prevailed, and it was decided that “the executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America” (Art. II., Sec. 1, Cl. 1).

**Election of President.**—The manner of his selection was then considered. Upon this there prevailed the widest difference of opinion, and it was not finally decided until the last two weeks of the sessions. The “Virginia Plan” provided that the executive should be appointed by the



national legislature. Three other modes were proposed—(1) by electors chosen by the people ; (2) by the state executives ; and (3) by the people directly. The first of these propositions was, after much discussion, adopted, and it was provided that :

Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress ; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each ; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President ; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said House shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice President. (Art. II., Sec. 1, Cl. 2 and 3.)

In 1804 the third clause was amended as follows:

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the vote shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States. (Amendment XII.)

**Electoral College.**—The electors thus chosen in the several States form the “Electoral College.” It was the belief of the framers of the Constitution that the electors in each State would form a deliberative body which would discuss the merits of different statesmen and cast their votes for the one best fitted for the presidency ; but with the first election in which party lines were strictly drawn (1796), the electors cast their ballots for the persons who were the recognized candidates of political parties ; and since that time, with but a few unimportant exceptions, the electors have voted for their party’s candidate. It is the usual custom that a State’s electors are voted for on a general ticket by all the qualified voters of the State. Each State, however, may prescribe its method of selecting electors. In the election of 1892 in Michigan, two electors were chosen on a general ticket by the State at large, and one by the people of each congressional district.

**Time of Election and Meeting.**—The Constitution provides that:

The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes ; which day shall be the same throughout the United States. (Art. II., Sec. 1, Cl. 4.)

The election of electors occurs on the first Tuesday next after the first Monday in November of each year divisible by four. The meetings of the electors in their respective States take place at the state capitals on the second Monday in January following their election. After the votes have been cast, the electors prepare triplicate certificates of the result, signed by all of them ; one



of these is mailed, and another sent by special messenger, to the President of the Senate ; the third is deposited with the District Judge of the federal district where the meeting is held.

**Counting the Ballots.**—The counting of the electoral votes, which occurs on the second Wednesday in February, has been done under joint resolution of the two houses of Congress, but the Constitution does not provide how it shall be done or who shall determine between the certificates received from two contesting sets of electors in the same State ; this was fixed by statute in 1887.

**President's Term of Office.**—In determining the President's term of office the Convention was influenced chiefly by the method of his selection. The original proposition was for a term of seven years, as it was deemed that a long term would make him more independent of the legislative branch ; but when the choice of the executive was given to a representative body entirely distinct from the national legislature, the reason for a long term disappeared, and it was provided that "he shall hold his office during the term of four years," . . . (Art. III., Sec. 1, Cl. 1). Through custom, however, it has become a settled rule that no person shall fill the office of President for more than two successive terms, a rule established by the action of Presidents Washington and Jefferson, who both declined to become candidates for reëlection after serving for two terms.

**Time of Inauguration.**—By a resolve of the Congress of the Confederacy, the President chosen under the Constitution was to be inaugurated on the first Wednesday in March, 1789. This happened to be the fourth day of the



month, so that the terms of succeeding Presidents have all commenced on that date, except when it is Sunday, and then on the succeeding day.

**Ceremony of Inauguration.**—The ceremony of inauguration takes place at Washington. An hour or so before noon the President-elect is conducted by the committee having the matter in charge to the Executive Mansion, where he joins the outgoing President, and seated at his left they are driven to the Capitol. In the presence of the assembled people the oath provided for in the Constitution (Art. II., Sec. 1, Cl. 8) is administered upon an open bible by the Chief Justice of the United States. The President then delivers an address, after which, accompanied by the former President seated at his left, he returns to the Executive Mansion and reviews the military and civic organizations which form the inaugural procession.

**Qualifications.**—The provisions of the Constitution relating to the qualifications for President are that:

No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States, at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States. (Art. II., Sec. 1, Cl. 5.)

The provision relative to a person who was a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of the Constitution was only applicable for a short period after 1787. The further provision that he must have resided fourteen years within the United States should probably be read in connection with the last, but may apply to the

whole clause. The question has never yet arisen. The qualification that the President should be a landowner was discussed by the Convention, but was rejected as limiting the choice of the electors to a class, and thus being contrary to republican institutions.

**Compensation.**—A subject constantly before the Convention, when considering the mode of electing the President, was the evil of making the latter in any way dependent upon the legislative branch. In order, therefore, to make the President independent of Congress for his support, the Constitution provides that:

The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he may have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them. (Art. II., Sec. 1., Cl. 7.)

The Government, however, pays the larger part of the President's official expenses. The act of 1793 fixed the annual salary of the President at \$25,000, which was increased in 1873 to \$50,000 and in 1909 to \$75,000.

**The Vice-President.**—Since the President was to be elected for a fixed term, it was provided that:

In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President [chosen for the same term (Art. II., Sec. 1., Cl. 1)], and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation or inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected. (Art. II., Sec. 1, Cl. 6.)

**Election of Vice-President.**—The provision for the election of the Vice-President (which is made in Article II., Section 1, Clause 3, and changed by Amendment XII.) differed from the provision for the election of the President in the original clause in not requiring a majority of the electoral votes, but only that the person having the next highest number to the President should be Vice-President. On the adoption of Amendment XII., which provided that the electors should designate their choice for President and Vice-President separately, the requirement of a majority was applied to both offices. Another difference is that in case there is no choice of a President by the electors or the "House," "the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President."

**Succession to the Presidency.**—By force of an act of Congress, which came into effect January 19, 1886, in case of the death, resignation or inability of both the President and Vice-President, the Secretary of State (if he is qualified to be elected President), and after him the Secretary of the Treasury, Secretary of War, Attorney-General, Postmaster-General, Secretary of the Navy and Secretary of the Interior, in this order, will hold the office of President until the disability ceases or another President is chosen. Before 1886 the President *pro tempore* of the Senate and the Speaker of the "House" would, in turn, have succeeded to the Presidency in such an emergency. The death of Vice-President Hendricks in November, 1885, called attention to the fact that, in case of the death of the President, a political opponent might, under the former act, succeed him. To avoid

such a possibility the act establishing the succession was changed.

## 2. EXECUTIVE POWERS.

**Military Power.**—The Constitution provides that:

The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States ; . . . (Art. II., Sec. 2, Cl. 1.)

Although no President has ever taken the field in this capacity, he is responsible for the conduct of military operations and possesses the implied war powers of opening hostilities and instituting a blockade. (See page 197.)

**Classification of Civil Powers.**—The civil powers of the President may be divided into five classes: 1. The Veto Power. 2. The Appointing Power. 3. The Pardoning Power. 4. The Power to conduct the relations with foreign countries. 5. The Power to administer the internal affairs of the nation.

1. **Veto Power.**—The Veto Power has been discussed in considering the legislative branch. (See page 118.)

2. **Appointing Power.**—The Appointing Power is that by which the President

shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments. (Art. II., Sec. 2, Cl. 2.)



**Civil Service Act.**—Appointments of this latter class have been limited by an act of Congress, known as the “Civil Service Act,” which establishes a Commission which classifies appointive positions and examines applicants for appointment to the Civil Service, under which term is included “the executive branch of the public service as distinguished from the military, naval, legislative and judicial.” The names of those who pass the examination, which is educational in character, are placed upon a list in the proper class, and an appointment to any classified office must be made from the list of that class. In the “Classified Civil Service,” however, are included no officers whose appointments are subject to the approval of the Senate, or who, holding positions of responsibility, could affect the policy of the Government.

**SPOILS SYSTEM.**—The limitation of the appointing power by the Civil Service Act was the outcome of a popular movement against what is known as the “Spoils System.” Since the time of President Jackson it had been customary to create vacancies in the civil service by removal for the sole purpose of filling them with members of the political party in control, on the principle that “to the victors belong the spoils.” Activity in the party rather than personal fitness thus regulated appointments. The chief evil of this system was not so much the weakening of the government service through the periodical appointment of inexperienced and inefficient officials as it was its corrupting influence on political parties. “Spoils” became the object of success in elections, and large sums were contributed by those in office to their party organizations to retain their positions, while the chief aim of their political opponents was to obtain the offices. Party principles and great national questions were lost sight of in this scramble for office, until public opinion became so strong against the evil that an organized movement for “Civil Service Reform” was commenced, resulting in the present laws. Its beneficial effects have already been felt

in the improvement in the government service and in lessening the corruption in the political parties.

**Executive Sessions.**—Nominations by the President of officers for whose appointment the Constitution requires senatorial consent are sent to the Senate by special messenger. The consideration of such nominations, and also of treaties, is held by the Senate behind closed doors, the public being excluded. Sessions of this character are termed “executive sessions,” because the Senate is exercising an executive and not a legislative function. From the fact that they are held *secretly*, the term “executive” is now generally applied to any secret session of the legislative body, without reference to the power which is being exercised.

**Appointments during Recess of Senate.**—The Constitution also provides that:

The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session. (Art. II., Sec. 2, Cl. 3.)

This clause applies only to such appointments as require senatorial consent. It is further provided that the President “shall commission all the officers of the United States” (Art. II., Sec. 3).

**Removals.**—There is connected with the appointing power the implied power to remove by dismissal a civil officer who fails to perform his duties or acts against the policy of the Government. Military and naval officers, however, are removed by court-martial; and members of the judiciary only by impeachment.

**3. Pardoning Power.**—The Constitution provides that the President

shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment. (Art. II., Sec. 2, Cl. 1.)

The pardoning power includes the right of pardon, amnesty, reprieve and commutation of sentence.

A **PARDON** is an act of the executive by which a person convicted of a crime is exempted from the punishment imposed by law. A general pardon, which applies to a number of persons guilty of the same offense, is termed an *amnesty*. A *reprieve* is the temporary suspension of the execution of a judicial sentence. A *commutation* of a sentence is lessening the severity of the punishment which the law imposes.

**Necessity of Power.**—This power is necessary to rectify errors of justice, but is not applicable to impeachment, because the Court of Impeachment is the highest instrument of the sovereignty, before which even the President and Justices of the Supreme Court can be summoned and tried.

**4. The Power to Conduct the Relations with Foreign Nations; Treaties.**—This power authorizes the President, “by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur” (Art. II., Sec. 2, Cl. 2). As the local interests of a State may be involved in a treaty, the Senate, which represents the States, is given a voice in its adoption. Thus the President in ratifying a treaty represents the people in general, and the Senate the States. A *treaty*, or a “convention,” as it is sometimes called, is a compact between two or more sovereign states for their general welfare.



**TREATY-MAKING.**—The usual method of entering into a treaty with a foreign government is as follows : The negotiators, who may be either the Secretary of State and the diplomatic representative of the other government, our minister to the other country and its minister of foreign affairs, or commissioners especially appointed for the purpose, meet and exhibit their credentials, which must be plenary. The usual commission of an ambassador or minister is not sufficient; he must have a special commission giving him power to negotiate this particular treaty.

**DRAFTING AND RATIFYING.**—The negotiators submit drafts of the proposed treaty and suggest changes until an agreement is reached. It is then prepared in duplicate and the treaty is “celebrated”; that is, signed by the negotiators. In each of these duplicates, or “counterparts,” the text of the treaty appears in English and in the language of the nation with which it is made. The treaty is then delivered to the President, who, if he approves, sends it to the Senate for ratification. When approved by two thirds of the Senators present it is returned to the President, who signs it and causes the Great Seal of the United States to be affixed.

**EXCHANGE OF RATIFICATIONS.**—The Secretary of State, or a commissioner with a special commission for this purpose, meets a commissioner of the other government, which has meanwhile ratified the treaty, and “ratifications are exchanged”; that is, the treaty signed by the President is delivered to the foreign commissioner and the treaty signed by the sovereign or president of the other country is given to the American representative.

**TREATY PROCLAIMED.**—As soon as the exchange of ratifications takes place, a proclamation, containing the text of the treaty, is issued by the Secretary of State in the name of the President, and it becomes a law of the United States.

**Peace and Armistice.**—As peace is made by treaty, the President can, with the consent of the Senate, make peace, and, without such consent, enter into an armistice for the cessation of hostilities, looking toward peace.

**5. The Power to Administer the Internal Affairs of the Nation.**—This power is implied by the clause, “He shall



take care that the laws be faithfully executed" (Art. II., Sec. 3).

**Power to Convene Congress.**—In connection with the two powers last discussed, the President "may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them" (*Id.*). Such occasions may be the consideration of a treaty, the probability of war, the necessity of preserving the credit of the country or providing funds to conduct the government.

### 3. THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS.

**Created by Congress.**—The Executive Departments, through which the President conducts the affairs of the nation, are recognized, although not directly established by the Constitution. They have been created and their duties defined by acts of Congress.

**The Cabinet.**—The Heads of Departments, as they are termed in the Constitution, form the "official family" of the President, and as such are called the *Cabinet*. They are appointed by the President, with the consent of the Senate, and can be removed by him at his discretion.

#### 1. THE CABINET.

**Origin.**—The Cabinet is not recognized by the Constitution. Although the advisability of such a council was discussed in the Constitutional Convention, it was not established because of a fear that it would lessen the responsibility of the chief magistrate to the people. But it was provided that the President

may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, . . . (Art. II., Sec. 2.)

Early in our history there was introduced the custom, which still continues, of having these officers meet with the President to consult upon important matters, so that the Cabinet has become a recognized part of our system of national government.

**Meetings.**—The Cabinet usually meets twice a week, but may be convened at any time. At these meetings the policy of the Government is discussed, but the President is not bound by the opinions expressed, and so his responsibility to the people for any executive act is in no way lessened.

**Cabinet in England and the United States.**—The word “Cabinet” is an adoption from the English term applied to the body of public ministers who enforce the laws. In Great Britain it possesses the executive authority ; its members sit in Parliament and are responsible to that body and to the sovereign for their acts. In the United States the Cabinet is merely an advisory body to the President, and neither the President nor any cabinet officer can, under the Constitution (Art. I., Sec. 6, Cl. 2), be a member of the Senate or House of Representatives.

## 2. THE DEPARTMENTS.

**When Created.**—The Executive Departments of the government were originally four in number—the Department of State, the Treasury Department, the War Department and the Department of Justice. To these were added in 1798 the Navy Department, in 1829 the Post

Office Department, in 1849 the Department of the Interior, in 1889 the Department of Agriculture, and in 1903 the Department of Commerce and Labor.

**Official Heads.** — The heads of these nine Departments are respectively the Secretary of State, the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of War, the Attorney-General of the United States, the Secretary of the Navy, the Postmaster-General, the Secretary of the Interior, the Secretary of Agriculture, and the Secretary of Commerce and Labor. These officers, appointed by the President, form the Cabinet and constitute the President's official advisers.

(a) *Department of State.*

**Duties.**—This Department has charge of the correspondence with agents of the United States in foreign countries, of negotiations with the diplomatic agents of other governments and of the general conduct of foreign affairs.

**Duties of Secretary of State.**—The Secretary of State, besides directing the affairs of his Department, is the custodian of the great seal of the United States. He is charged with the promulgation of the laws ; with giving notice of proposed constitutional amendments and with their promulgation when adopted ; with notifying the state authorities of vacancies in the offices of President or Vice-President ; and with issuing proclamations and other presidential communications of a public character.

**Passports.**—The Secretary of State can grant passports to citizens of the United States who go abroad intending to return. A *passport* is a certificate that the person described in it is a citizen of the United States, and is used

for the purpose of identification and to obtain the protection and rights to which he is entitled.

**Diplomatic and Consular Service.**—The agents of the United States in foreign countries are of two classes: diplomatic and consular.

**Diplomatic Service.**—A *Diplomatic Agent* is an official accredited—that is, sent with credentials of his character and rank—to a foreign sovereign or government, whose duty is to conduct the official intercourse between the United States and that sovereign or government, which is done through the Minister of Foreign Affairs of the other country. The conduct of such intercourse is termed *diplomacy*. There are four grades in the Diplomatic Service, which rank in the order given: (1) Ambassadors; (2) Ministers Plenipotentiary; (3) Ministers Resident; and (4) Chargés d’Affaires.

An *Ambassador* is supposed to be the representative of the person of the sovereign, and as such entitled to special privileges, among which was claimed the right to deal directly with the sovereign to whom he is accredited. This important privilege is, however, denied by later authorities, and ambassadors differ from other diplomatic representatives only in rank, which affects their social rather than their official standing.

A *Minister Plenipotentiary*, or, to give him his full title, “Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary,” represents the affairs, not the person, of the sovereign.\* The word “plenipotentiary” never possesses its full meaning in this connection.

\* There being no one individual in the United States who possesses the sovereignty, representation of the sovereign’s person is in a measure fic-



A *Minister Resident* differs from a Minister Plenipotentiary only in grade.

A *Chargé d'Affaires* represents the Secretary of State, and is accredited to the minister of foreign affairs of the government to which he is sent. A *Chargé d'Affaires ad interim* is an official who, during the absence of an ambassador or minister, performs his duties. He is usually the first secretary of the embassy or legation.

**Diplomatic Commissioners.**—Besides these diplomatic agents, a commissioner, with the rank of one of the first two grades, is sometimes appointed for a special purpose, such as the negotiation of a treaty or the settlement of claims.

**Diplomatic Privileges.**—Diplomatic agents and their attachés possess certain exceptional privileges which are universally recognized. For example, they are exempt from criminal prosecutions and actions at law, and their persons and property are protected from seizure or injury.

**Duties of Diplomatic Agents.**—The principal duties of diplomatic agents are the negotiation of treaties, the settlement of claims and disputes between the two governments, the protection of citizens of the United States, the issuance of passports and the reporting to the Secretary of State the political events which occur in the country where they reside.

**PERSONA NON GRATA.**—In case a diplomatic representative is *persona non grata*—that is, one personally objectionable to the titious and difficult of application. The distinction between ambassadors and ministers is based upon monarchical institutions, but was adopted by the United States in 1893 for the purpose of gaining for our diplomatic representatives of the first grade the consideration which only ambassadors enjoy in foreign courts.

government to which he is accredited—the minister of foreign affairs notifies the Secretary of State through the regular diplomatic channels, the minister is recalled and another is appointed who is *persona grata*. In the notice to the Secretary of State it is customary to give the grounds of objection, but it is not necessary, as the mere fact that he is objectionable to the foreign government is sufficient.

**Severance of Diplomatic Relations.**—When the relations between the United States and another country become strained, and war is imminent, the representative of the other nation at Washington demands or is given his passports, or safe conduct, and he is expected to leave this country at once. The United States representative to the other government is also given or demands his passports, and leaves the country. Thus diplomatic relations are broken off. Whatever official intercourse occurs between the two governments after their diplomatic agents have been withdrawn is carried on through the ministers of other countries.

**Consular Service.**—The Consular Service is divided into four grades: (1) Consuls-General; (2) Consuls; (3) Commercial Agents; and (4) Consular Agents.

A member of the Consular Service is an agent of the United States in a foreign country, to protect its citizens and commercial interests. Before he can begin his services his commission is forwarded to the diplomatic representative of the United States, who applies to the minister of foreign affairs of the country to which the officer is commissioned for permission for him to perform his consular duties. This permission is called an *exequatur*, and whenever it is revoked the consular officer must cease to act.

A *Consul-General* is sent to a country with which the United States has large commercial interests. He has supervision of the entire consular service in such country; and in certain countries (such as Great Britain, France, Germany, Italy, etc.) all consular officers send their reports to the Department of State through their Consuls-General.

A *Consul* has charge of the commercial relations between the United States and a certain district, in which he is authorized to perform his duties.

Consuls-General and Consuls are appointed by the President, with the advice and consent of the Senate.

A *Commercial Agent* differs from a Consul chiefly in rank. He is appointed by the President alone. Such an officer is usually not recognized by the country to which he is sent; but it is customary for the United States to request an *exequatur* to be issued to its Commercial Agents.

A *Consular Agent* is an official appointed by the President to act in part of a district in which the Consul is unable to perform his duties alone. A Consular Agent is under the supervision of, and reports to, the Consul of the district. Besides these regular grades there are vice-consular officers (such as Vice-Consuls-General, Vice-Consuls, etc.), who perform the duties of their superiors during the temporary absence of the latter.

**Duties of Consular Officers.**—The chief duties of Consuls are to report to the Secretary of State the conditions of trade between the United States and their districts and to make suggestions in relation to their improvement; to authenticate papers; to settle disputes between American

sea captains and their crews ; to give aid to shipwrecked or indigent citizens of the United States ; and in the absence of a diplomatic agent (as in colonies such as Canada or Australia) to issue passports.

**No Official Privileges.**—Consuls possess none of the immunities enjoyed by diplomatic officers. They are subject to the laws of the country where they reside, both criminal and civil. There is generally an exception to this rule in half-civilized and non-Christian countries, where by treaty they are given diplomatic privileges.

### *(b) Treasury Department.*

**Duties.**—This Department has the management and custody of the finances of the United States, and supervision of the National Banking System.

**Collection of Revenues.**—It collects the customs duties, and to prevent violations of the tariff laws has a number of vessels, known as “revenue cutters,” whose chief duty is to patrol the coasts and seize smugglers. It also collects the internal revenues and enforces the revenue laws. To prevent their violation, to apprehend counterfeiters and to protect the government funds, it employs a corps of agents and detectives, known as the “Secret Service.”

**Coinage.**—The Treasury Department has charge of the mints and coins the money of the United States. The Bureau of Engraving and Printing, where the different forms of bills in circulation are made, is under this Department.

**Custody of Funds.**—It also has the custody of any other



government funds, and disburses money as directed by the laws passed by Congress.

**Other Branches.**—The Life-saving Service and the supervision of the construction of national buildings are under the control of this Department. The clerical force of the Treasury, which is the largest of any Department, belongs in a great measure to the classified civil service.

**Duties of Secretary of the Treasury.**—The Secretary of the Treasury has the special duties of making regulations for the enforcement of the customs, internal revenue and immigration laws, of making an annual report to Congress with an estimate of receipts and expenditures for the following year, and of publishing every three months a statement of the receipts and expenditures for the past quarter.

**National Banks.**—A *bank* is an association for the deposit and loan of money, and to facilitate its transference by drafts and bills of exchange. A *national bank* is one incorporated under the federal laws. National banks are under the supervision of a bureau of the Treasury Department, at the head of which is the Comptroller of the Currency.

**ORGANIZATION.**—A national bank may be organized by not less than five persons with a minimum capital ranging from \$25,000 to \$200,000, which is determined by the number of inhabitants in the place where it is organized. After organization a bank cannot act until the Comptroller has issued to it a certificate, which must be renewed every twenty years.

**DEPOSIT OF BONDS ; BANK NOTES.**—A bank, before issuing notes, must deposit with the Treasury United States bonds equal to one fourth of its capital unless that exceeds \$150,000, in which

case the deposit of bonds must be \$50,000. Upon this deposit the Treasury issues to the bank, at its request, National Bank Notes for circulation to any amount less than ninety per cent. of the bonds deposited. On its note-issue a bank pays an annual tax of one per cent.

PROHIBITIONS.—A National Bank is prohibited from making loans upon real estate, from accepting its own stock as security, from loaning to one person an amount exceeding one tenth of its capital and from impairing its capital without replacing the amount within three months after receiving notice from the Comptroller.

GOVERNMENT SUPERVISION.—Five reports a year must be made to the Comptroller at such times as he designates; and an examiner, appointed by him, visits a bank from time to time and reports the state of its affairs. By these means the Comptroller is kept constantly informed of the condition of each bank in the country. When a bank fails, its affairs are placed in the hands of a receiver, appointed by the Comptroller, who converts its assets into money and deposits them in the Treasury, out of which the Comptroller may from time to time declare dividends to the bank's creditors.

LIABILITY OF STOCKHOLDERS.—In case the assets of a bank are not sufficient to pay its debts, each stockholder may be assessed by the Comptroller to an amount not exceeding the face value of the stock which he holds.

ADVANTAGE OF SYSTEM.—The great advantages of the National Bank System are the uniformity of banking throughout the country and the security to depositors by reason of government supervision and the Comptroller's management of the affairs of a bank which has failed.

**Legal Tender.**—Before leaving the financial branch of the government a brief statement should be made concerning "legal tender" in the United States. *Legal tender* is the money or currency which by law a person can require a creditor to accept in settlement of a debt. In the United States gold coins are legal tender to any

amount ; silver dollars and Treasury notes of the Act of 1890 are full legal tender unless limited by contract ; greenbacks (United States notes), except as interest on the national debt ; national bank notes in payments to any national bank or for customs duties and debts of the Government except for interest on national bonds ; silver coins of a lower denomination than a dollar are full legal tender to the amount of ten dollars ; and nickel and copper coins, to the amount of twenty-five cents.

COINS.—Any person can send to one of the mints any amount of gold bullion, and, upon the payment of the cost of minting, called “seigniorage,” have it coined into money. This privilege, being unlimited, is called “free coinage.” The Treasury purchases the silver, nickel and copper which are made into coins, but only such amounts can be bought and coined as Congress authorizes. There is no free coinage of these metals.

CIRCULATING NOTES.—A *Treasury Note*, issued under the Act of 1890, is one secured by silver dollars stored in the Treasury. A *Greenback*, or *United States Note*, is merely a promise to pay the amount to the bearer. A *National Bank Note* is a promise by the bank which issues it to pay the bearer the amount of it, and is secured, as has been said, by a deposit of government bonds. All varieties of circulating notes are engraved by the Treasury and are redeemed or canceled by that Department.

### (c) *The War Department.*

Duties.—This Department has charge of the construction and maintenance of the military stations and of the organization and maintenance of the military forces of the United States. The Department has also the direction of the Military Academy at West Point, N. Y. Prior to the establishment of the Department of the

Interior, Indian Affairs were for a time conducted by the War Department.

*(d) The Department of Justice.*

**Duties.**—This Department has the general supervision of actions and proceedings brought by or against the United States in the federal courts, and also has the control of the District Attorneys and Marshals of the United States.

**Duties of Attorney-General.**—The Attorney-General is required to give a legal opinion upon any question submitted to him by the President or by the Heads of the Departments, and to argue suits in the Supreme Court and Court of Claims in which the United States is interested. He is required to examine and approve the title to land before it can be purchased by the United States ; and he also examines and makes recommendations concerning applications for pardons and reprieves before they are acted upon by the President.

*(e) The Navy Department.*

**Duties.**—This Department is charged with the construction, equipment and maintenance of the navy and naval stations, and with the organization and maintenance of the naval forces of the United States. The Naval Academy at Annapolis, Md., is under this Department.

*(f) The Post-Office Department.*

**Duties.**—This Department controls the foreign and domestic postal service of the United States. Its em-



ployees, excepting postmasters, are generally subject to the civil service laws.

**Powers of Postmaster-General.** — The Postmaster-General is empowered by law to institute and discontinue post-offices, and, with the consent of the President, and without the consent of the Senate, to negotiate postal treaties with foreign nations.

*(g) The Department of the Interior.*

**Duties.** — This Department has charge of the public lands, including mines, the care of Indian tribes in the United States, of education, and of the railroads in which the United States has an interest.

**Patents ; Pensions.** — The issuing of patents belongs to this Department, as does the granting of pensions. A *pension* is a stated allowance granted to soldiers and sailors disabled by wounds incurred or disease contracted in the service of their country, and also, under certain conditions, to their widows and children.

*(h) The Department of Agriculture.*

**Duties.** — This Department is devoted to the securing, preservation and publication of information relative to all branches of agriculture, the collection and distribution of seeds among agriculturists, the inspection of cattle and meats exported, and the prevention of diseases among live stock.

**Weather Bureau.** — This Department has charge of the Weather Bureau, which issues daily weather maps and forecasts for the succeeding twenty-four hours. The work of the Weather Bureau is particularly valuable along the

coasts and on the Great Lakes in giving timely warning of approaching storms, and also in making a study of the climate of the United States.

(i) *The Department of Commerce and Labor.*

**Duties.** — It is the duty of this Department to promote trade, transportation and fisheries, and the laboring and manufacturing interests of the country. To this end, it has charge of lighthouses, the coast survey, immigration and foreign commerce. It also embraces the *Fish* and *Labor Commissions* and takes the national census every ten years.

**Bureaus.** — The *Bureau of Manufacturing* is charged with the development of manufacturing industries and markets for the same at home and abroad. The *Bureau of Corporations* is empowered to investigate the management of corporations doing business in two or more States and report the same to the President for the purpose of recommending legislation.

(j) *Commissions, Bureaus, Etc.*

Besides these Departments, there belong to the Executive Branch of the government the *Civil Service Commission*, already spoken of; the *Interstate Commerce Commission*, which has supervision of railroads which pass from one State into another; the *Government Printing Office*, which publishes the "Congressional Record," presidential messages, reports and all other official documents; the *Librarian of Congress*, who is in charge of the Library of Congress and of the issuance of Copyrights; and other bureaus in charge of the national museums and scientific collections.

#### 4. DUTIES OF THE EXECUTIVE.

**Implied Duties of President.**—The duties of the President are chiefly those implied in the powers vested in him, and for the proper exercise of which he is responsible.

**Annual and Other Messages.**—There are certain of his duties, however, which are specified in the Constitution. It is provided that:

He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; . . . (Art. II., Sec. 3.)

Custom has established that at the opening of each session of Congress the President shall send to the two houses an *Annual Message* containing a review of the foreign and domestic affairs of the United States during the preceding year, and outlining what he deems the best policy as to existing conditions. The President may also submit a special message to Congress at any time when a question of importance arises which demands legislative action, with or without expressing his opinion as to the course to be pursued.

**Mode of Delivering Messages.**—Presidents Washington and Adams delivered their annual communications orally, but President Jefferson inaugurated the custom, since followed, of sending them in writing, to be read before the two houses.\*

\* Presidents Washington and Adams, at the opening of each regular session of Congress, complied with the constitutional requirement by

**Reception of Foreign Representatives.**—The President is also directed by the Constitution to “receive ambassadors and other public ministers” (*Id.*). A diplomatic representative delivers his credentials to the Secretary of State, and, if they are satisfactory, he is officially presented by the latter officer to the President and becomes the recognized agent of his government. In case two governments exist in the same country, it rests with the President to determine which of their agents represents the sovereignty.

**Sole Responsibility of President.**—The President “shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed” (*Id.*). This provision emphasizes his sole responsibility for the proper administration of national affairs, and prevents any question being raised as to the division of such responsibility.

personally delivering an “Annual Address,” or “Speech,” to the two houses of Congress, which met jointly for that purpose; and to this address each house replied through its presiding officer. All other communications of the Executive were by “Special Message,” a copy of which was sent by messenger to each house. President Jefferson, at the opening of the first session after his inauguration, sent a memorandum to Congress stating that he deemed it advisable not to make the annual communication “by personal address,” but to adopt the method “by message” which had been employed by his predecessors on all special occasions.



## THE EXECUTIVE BRANCH.

## THE PRESIDENT.

## Powers.

*Military.*

- |   |                                 |            |
|---|---------------------------------|------------|
| { | Command of                      | { Army.    |
|   |                                 | { Navy.    |
|   |                                 | { Militia. |
|   | Conduct of military operations. |            |
| { | Begin hostilities.              |            |
|   | Institute a blockade.           |            |

*Civil.*

- |                            |                             |  |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| {                          | Veto.                       |  |
|                            | Appoint                     | { Ambassadors.                         |
|                            |                             | { Public Ministers.                    |
|                            |                             | { Consuls.                             |
|                            |                             | { Judges.                              |
|                            |                             | { Other officers of the United States. |
|                            | Civil Service               | { Classified.                          |
|                            |                             | { Unclassified.                        |
|                            | Pardon                      | { Pardon.                              |
|                            |                             | { Amnesty.                             |
| { Reprieve.                |                             |  |
| { Commutation of sentence. |                             |  |
| {                          | Conduct foreign relations   | { Convene Congress for these           |
|                            | Administer internal affairs |  |

## Duties.

- |   |                                  |                  |                       |            |
|---|----------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| { | Give information                 | { to Congress by | { Annual }<br>Special | } Message. |
|   | Recommend measures               |                  |                       |            |
|   | Receive foreign representatives. |                  |                       |            |
|   | Execute the laws.                |                  |                       |            |

## THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS.

## Department of State.

Secretary of State	{	Custody of the Great Seal.			
		Promulgate laws.			
	{	Give notice of	{	Constitutional Amendments.	
		Promulgate			
	{	Issue	{	Proclamations.	
				Presidential Communications.	
	Correspondence with and direction of	{	Diplomatic service	{	Ambassadors.
					Ministers Plenipotentiary.
		{	Consular service	{	Ministers Resident.
					Chargés d’Affaires.
{			{	Consuls-General.	
				Consuls.	
{			{	Commercial Agents.	
				Consular Agents.	
Negotiations with foreign diplomatic agents.					

## Treasury Department.

Secretary of the Treasury	{	Make	{	Regulations	{	Customs. [nue.
						Internal reve-
						Immigration.
				Annual estimate.		
Collection of	{	Publish quarterly statement.	{	Customs duties.		
				Internal revenue.		
Coinage	{	Coins	{	Gold.		
				Silver.		
				Nickel.		
				Copper.		
Circulating notes	{		{	Treasury notes.		
				U. S. notes (Greenbacks)		
				National bank notes.		
Supervision of national banks.						
Custody and Disbursement of	{		{	All government funds.		
Direction of	{		{	Life-saving service.		
				Construction of National Buildings, etc.		

**War Department.**

{ <i>Secretary of War:</i>		
Construction and	}	of military stations
Maintenance		
Organization and	}	of land forces.
Maintenance		

**Department of Justice.**

{	<i>The Attorney-General</i>	Advise	{ President.
		Argue U. S. suits	{ Heads of departments.
			{ Supreme Court.
		Examine and	{ Court of Claims.
		Approve	{ Titles to lands purchased
		Examine and	{ by the United States.
{	Supervision of legal actions when United States a party.	Recommend	{ as to pardons.
		Control of	{ District Attorneys.
			{ Marshals.

**Navy Department.**

{ <i>Secretary of the Navy:</i>		
Construction,	}	{ Navy.
Equipment and		
Maintenance	}	{ Naval stations.
Organization and		
Maintenance	{ of naval forces.	

**Post-Office Department.**

{	<i>Postmaster-General</i>	Institute and	}	Post-offices.
		Discontinue		
		Negotiate postal treaties.		
{	Control of postal service.	Foreign.	}	
		Domestic.		

**Department of the Interior.**

{ <i>Secretary of the Interior:</i>		
{	Care of	Public lands.
		Indians.
		Education.
		Railroads.
{ Issuance of patents.		
{ Granting of pensions.		

**Department of Agriculture.**

<i>Secretary of Agriculture:</i>		
{	Preservation and Publication	} of agricultural information.
	Collection,	
{	Testing and Distribution	} of seeds.
{	Inspection of exported	{ Cattle.
		{ Meat.
Prevention of diseases among live stock.		

**Weather Bureau.****Department of Commerce and Labor.**

<i>Secretary of Commerce and Labor :</i>		
Promote	{	Trade.
		Transportation.
		Fisheries.
		Labor and
		Manufacture.
Charge of	{	Lighthouses.
		Coast survey.
		Foreign commerce.
Enforcement of immigration laws.		
Taking and	}	of national census.
Publication		
Bureau of manufacturing.		
Bureau of corporations.		

**Civil Service Commission.****Interstate Commerce Commission.****Commissioner of Labor.****Fish Commission.****Government Printing Office.**

**Librarian of Congress** { Charge of Congressional Library.  
 { Issuance of copyrights.

**Bureaus** in charge of { National Museum.  
 { Scientific collections, etc.



## CHAPTER IV.

### THE JUDICIAL BRANCH.

#### 1. *THE FEDERAL JUDICIARY.*

**The Judicial Power.**—The judicial power of the United States, shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. (Art. III., Sec. 1.)

The system of courts thus established is generally recognized as chiefly instrumental in giving stability and permanence to the national government.

**Judiciary of the Confederacy.**—Under the Articles of Confederation there was practically no national judiciary. The Congress was the arbiter in boundary disputes between States and was empowered to establish prize courts ; but the interpretation and application of the laws of the Confederacy rested with the state courts, from whose decisions there was no appeal. As a result, these interpretations were affected by local prejudice or interest.

**Necessity of a National Judiciary.**—The need of a national judiciary for the application of the national laws in the same way to every citizen of every State, as well as for a check upon the acts of the state governments and the legislative branch of the federal government, was early recognized by the Convention of 1787. The

check upon the national legislature could not be exercised by the state courts, for there would be no uniformity in their decisions. But if there was no such check, it was evident that the constitutional limitations upon legislation would be ineffective, as Congress, in conjunction with the President, would, like the British Parliament, be practically supreme.

**Independence of Judiciary.**—It was evident also that the tribunal possessed of such powers should be independent of the other branches of the government, both for its maintenance and tenure of office, so that it might act with that freedom and fearlessness which were essential to the proper performance of its duties. Therefore the Constitution provides that :

The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services, a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office. (Art. III., Sec. 1.)

**Establishment of the Judiciary.**—There was thus established a judiciary, national and independent, with power in Congress to provide for inferior courts, from which appeals could be taken to the higher tribunal. The provisions for the judiciary were determined upon in the early sessions of the Convention, and though the greater part of the Constitution underwent numerous modifications, these remained practically unchanged.

**The Impeaching Power.**—In one particular, however, the national tribunal was deprived of a judicial power originally given to it. That was to try impeachments, for it was apparent that if no check were placed upon the

judges they might become the supreme power in the government by annulling the laws of Congress and removing the executive officers by impeachment. To prevent such a possibility, the Convention lodged the impeaching power in the legislative branch and made the judicial officers themselves subject to removal from office upon impeachment.

The completed Constitution thus established three divisions of the judicial power: first, that given to the Senate, a Court of Impeachment ; second, the Supreme Court of the United States ; and third, such inferior courts as Congress might create.

### 1. THE COURT OF IMPEACHMENT.

**Definition.**—*Impeachment*, under the Constitution, is a charge made in writing by the House of Representatives to the Senate against a civil officer of the United States. The charge or charges are termed *Articles of Impeachment*.

**Constitutional Provisions.**—The provisions in the Constitution relating to impeachment are as follows:

The House of Representatives . . . shall have the sole power of impeachment. (Art. I., Sec. 2, Cl. 5.) The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside ; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present. (Art. I., Sec. 3, Cl. 6.)

Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under the United States ; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject

to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law. (Art. I., Sec. 3, Cl. 7.)

The President, Vice President and all civil officers of the United States shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors. (Art. II., Sec. 4.)

The words “civil officers” in the last provision include all the judicial and executive officers of the government excepting those of the army and navy, but it has been held that members of the legislative branch are not of this class.

**Origin.**—Since the time of Edward III. the English House of Commons has exercised the right to summon any English subject before the House of Lords for trial. Upon this power there was no limitation as to person or punishment, and its abuses prior to the American Revolution induced the Constitutional Convention to limit the jurisdiction and judgment of the Court of Impeachment.

**Procedure.**—The method of impeachment in the United States is as follows: When a civil officer is charged with having committed an impeachable act, the House of Representatives appoints a committee to investigate the charges. If the report of the committee is against the accused and is sustained by a majority of the House, usually seven Representatives, called “Managers,” are elected to impeach the officer before the bar of the Senate and to conduct the trial.

**Trial.**—The accused is then summoned to appear before the Senate, which resolves itself into a Court of Impeachment. If the officer does not appear, the Senate takes the proof without him; but if he appears and denies the



accusation, a time is fixed for the trial, when it proceeds in much the same way as in an ordinary criminal trial in the federal courts. When deciding a question raised during the trial or when considering the verdict, the Senate does so in secret session, after which its decisions are publicly announced.

**Conviction.**—No officer can be convicted in case of impeachment unless two-thirds of the Senators present concur, but it would seem that questions raised during the trial can be determined by the majority. In the trial of a person for treason the Constitution provides that:

No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court. (Art. III., Sec. 3, Cl. 1.)

**Trial of President.**—In case the President is impeached, it is manifest that the Vice-President is interested in the trial, for, if the accused is convicted and deprived of his office, the Vice-President would succeed him. In view of this fact, the provision was inserted in the Constitution that in such case the Chief Justice shall preside at the trial.

**Grounds for Impeachment.**—The grounds for impeachment are stated in the Constitution to be “treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.” *Treason* against the United States is defined by the Constitution to “consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort” (Art. III., Sec. 3, Cl. 1). *Bribery* is the giving, tendering or receiving of any gift as a reward for performing a legal duty. *High crimes and misdemeanors* cover all

classes of crimes, but whether a crime committed by an officer not in his official capacity is an impeachable offense is a question as yet undecided.

## 2. THE SUPREME COURT.

**Composition.**—This tribunal is composed of judges appointed by the President with the consent of the Senate. There is no provision as to number, although from Article II., Section 2, Clause 2, it would appear that the framers of the Constitution contemplated more than one judge, and a *Chief* Justice is mentioned in Article I., Section 3, Clause 6 ; nor is it provided where or when the court shall hold its sessions. These details have been supplied by laws enacted by Congress. By the Judicial Act of 1789 the number of Justices was made six, which has since been increased to nine.

**Sessions.**—The Court sits at Washington, and holds one session annually, commencing on the second Monday in October.

## 3. INFERIOR COURTS.

**Divisions.**—In accordance with the provisions of the Constitution (Art. III., Sec. 1), Inferior Courts have been established by acts of Congress. They will be considered in the following order: (*a*) District Courts ; (*b*) Circuit Courts ; (*c*) Circuit Courts of Appeal ; and (*d*) the Court of Claims. The judges are appointed in the same way and for the same term as the Justices of the Supreme Court, and their compensation is guaranteed by the same constitutional provision.

*(a) District Courts.*

**Districts and Judges.**—Congress has set apart each State as a judicial district, except in case of the more populous States, which are divided into two or more districts. At present (1911) there are ninety-two judicial districts. There is a resident Judge in each district ; and the court is held by a District Judge.

*(b) Circuit Courts.*

**Circuits and Judges.**—The United States is also divided into nine judicial circuits. To each Circuit the Supreme Court allots one of its Justices, who must attend at least one term of such Court in every two years. For each circuit there are also appointed two or more Circuit Judges. Prior to the establishment of the Circuit Courts of Appeal, there was but one Judge appointed for each Circuit.

**Terms.**—A Circuit Court sits twice a year in each district within the circuit. It may be held by the Justice of the Supreme Court, a Circuit Judge, or a District Judge sitting alone, or by the Justice and a Circuit Judge together, or by either of them sitting with the District Judge.

*(c) Circuit Courts of Appeal.*

**Number and Purpose.**—They are nine in number and were created for the purpose of relieving the Supreme Court of certain classes of appeals.

**Composition.**—A Circuit Court of Appeal consists of three Judges, two of whom form a quorum. It is held by the Justice of the Supreme Court allotted to that cir-

cuit and two Circuit Judges, but a District Judge is also competent to act. No judge, however, can hear a case in the Circuit Court of Appeal at the trial of which he presided in the District or Circuit Court.

(d) *The Court of Claims.*

**Composition and Session.**—This Court consists of five Judges, appointed in the same manner as other judicial officers, one of whom is Chief Justice of the Court. It sits in Washington and holds one session annually.

4. COURT OFFICERS.

**United States Commissioners.**—*United States Commissioners* are appointed in each circuit by the Circuit Courts, to assist the District and Circuit Judges. Their chief duties are to administer oaths, to examine and commit offenders against the federal laws, and to examine witnesses in certain cases.

**District Attorneys.**—A *District Attorney* is appointed by the President for each judicial district to conduct criminal cases and civil actions, to which the United States is a party, in the inferior courts except the Court of Claims.

**Clerks.**—A *Clerk* is appointed by the various courts, who has charge of the archives, the seal and the moneys paid into court.

**Marshals.**—A *Marshal* is appointed by the President in each district, who executes the commands of the court, makes arrests for the violation of the federal laws and is given power to appoint deputies to aid him in the performance of his duties.



## 2. THE JURISDICTION OF THE FEDERAL COURTS.

JURISDICTION is the authority to administer justice under the laws. It may be limited as to the matter in controversy, or the persons involved. It is also either *original* or *appellate*.

ORIGINAL JURISDICTION is the authority of a court to try a cause which has not been submitted to any other court, to receive evidence of the facts, to apply the laws and to render judgment.

APPELLATE JURISDICTION is the authority of a court to review a cause, tried and determined in another court, without taking further evidence, and to reverse, modify or approve the judgment rendered.

CONCURRENT JURISDICTION is that which a court possesses in common with another court or courts.

THE COMMON LAW consists of those rules of justice, not enacted by the legislative power, which courts in England and the United States have declared to be the right principles for the regulation of society.

As the rules of the Common Law became definite and fixed, another branch of jurisprudence was introduced, termed *Equity*, which arose from the same source, natural justice, and was intended to supplement or correct the settled rules of the Common Law, when their application would work hardship or injustice.

The Common Law and Equity are termed the *Unwritten Law*. *Statute Law* comprises those laws which have been enacted by the legislative power. These are called the *Written Law*, and supersede the Common Law and Equity whenever their rules conflict.

This system of jurisprudence, introduced in America with the earliest English settlements, was the only one with which the Colonists were familiar at the time of the Revolution. It was, therefore, recognized as a proper basis for judicial proceedings, and is to-day the system employed in the federal courts and in all the States except Louisiana, which derives its jurisprudence from France, and except in relation to certain questions of land titles arising in the States and Territories included in the lands ceded to the United States by Mexico.

ADMIRALTY LAW is that which relates to maritime cases, both

civil and criminal, and in the United States pertains to the high seas, the great lakes and navigable rivers.

A CRIMINAL ACTION is a prosecution in a court of law begun by the Government against an individual, which has for its object the punishment of a crime.

A CIVIL ACTION is one begun by the Government or a person against another person, to collect debts, enforce contracts, determine rights or recover damages for injuries.

A PERSON, in a legal sense, includes a single individual, a partnership, association or corporation.

### 1. CONSTITUTIONAL LIMITATIONS.

**As to Subject.**—As to the *subject in controversy*, the jurisdiction of the federal courts is limited by the Constitution

to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ; . . . [and] to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction ; . . . (Art. III., Sec. 2, Cl. 1.)

**As to Parties.**—As to *parties*, the federal jurisdiction is limited by the Constitution

to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls ; . . . to controversies to which the United States shall be a party ; to controversies between two or more States ; between a State and the citizens of another State ; between citizens of different States ; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens or subjects. (*Id.*)

The above provisions were modified in 1798 by Amendment XI., which provides:

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prose-

cuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

**As to Penalties.**—In criminal cases the Constitution provides that excessive fines shall not be imposed nor cruel and unusual punishments be inflicted (Amendment VIII.; see page 185). In convictions for treason the punishment is limited by the provision that

no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted. (Art. III., Sec. 3, Cl. 2.)

Congress, under the power granted to it by this last section, has fixed the punishment as death, or, at the discretion of the court, imprisonment for not less than five years, a fine of not less than ten thousand dollars, and incapacity to hold any office under the United States.

## 2. ORIGINAL AND APPELLATE JURISDICTION OF THE SUPREME COURT.

**Original.**—The original jurisdiction of the Supreme Court is confined to two classes of cases, for the Constitution provides:

In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. (Art. III., Sec. 2, Cl. 2.)

**Appellate.**—The appellate jurisdiction of the Court is much more extensive, but is subject to congressional regulations, which pertain chiefly to limiting the classes of cases which can be appealed. The provision of the Constitution is :

In all the other cases before mentioned the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make. (*Id.*)

### 3. JURISDICTION OF THE INFERIOR COURTS.

**Power of Congress.**—As these tribunals are created by Congress, it follows that their jurisdiction must be established by legislative acts, but it cannot exceed the constitutional limitations.

Congress can, therefore, change or modify the jurisdiction of the different courts at any time, and this has been done in certain instances.

#### (a) *Courts of Original Jurisdiction.*

**The Courts.**—The courts of original jurisdiction, only, are the District Courts, the Circuit Courts and the Court of Claims.

**District and Circuit Courts.**—The District and Circuit Courts have concurrent jurisdiction of some civil actions and certain criminal cases, but all of the latter in which the sentence of death may be imposed must be brought in a Circuit Court. Admiralty cases and, generally, bankruptcy matters, must come before the District Courts, while cases arising under the revenue, patent and copy-right laws must be brought in the Circuit Courts.

**Juries.**—The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury ; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed. (Art. III., Sec. 2, Cl. 3.) (See Amendments VI. and VII., pages 185 and 187.)



**Court of Claims.**—The Court of Claims has sole and original jurisdiction of claims against the United States Government generally, and in all cases which involve less than three thousand dollars its decisions are final.

*(b) Courts of Appellate Jurisdiction.*

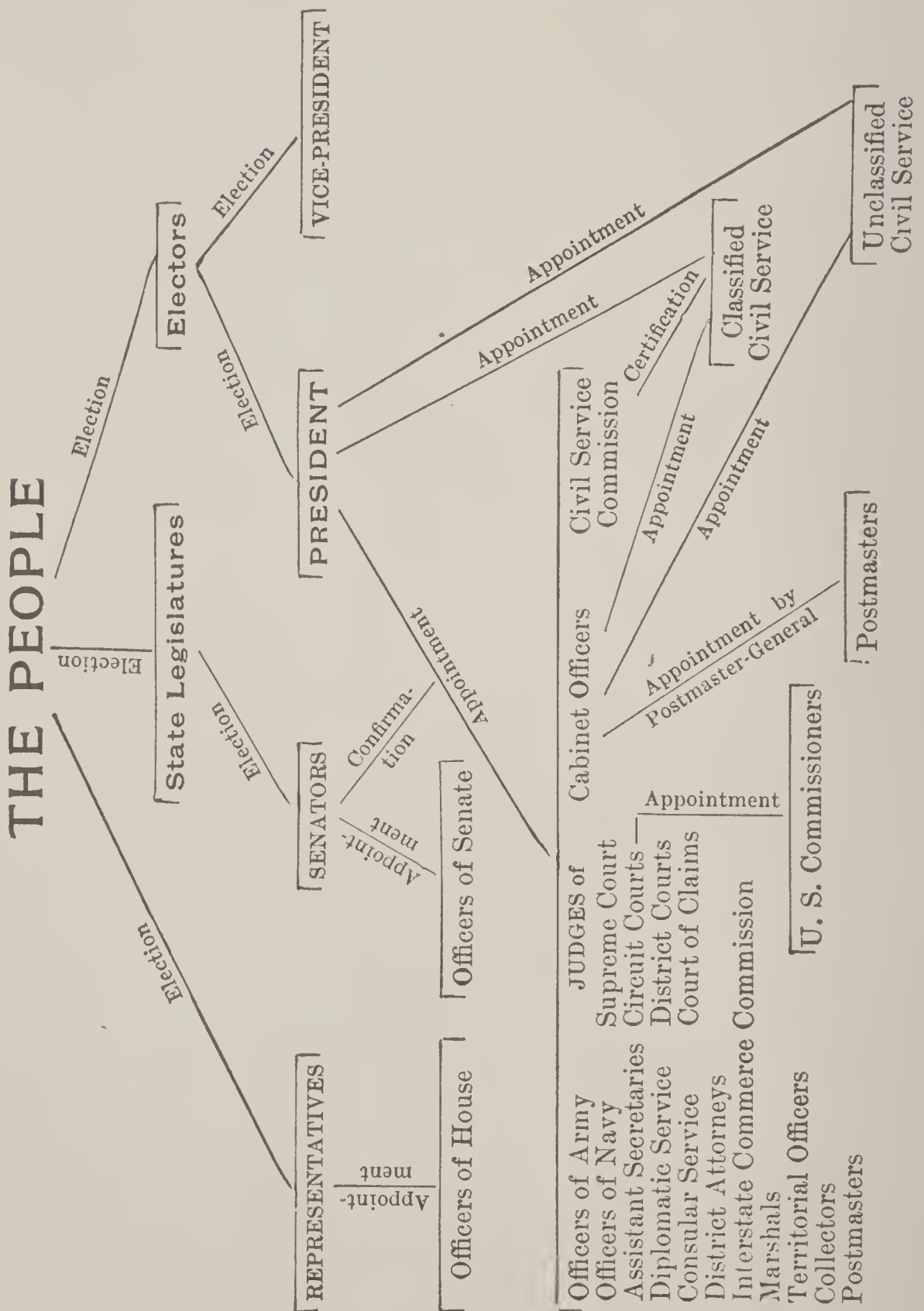
**Circuit Courts of Appeal.**—Except in certain cases, in which Congress has provided for appeals directly to the Supreme Court, a party dissatisfied with the decision of a District or Circuit Court may appeal to a Circuit Court of Appeal; and in some cases, such as those relating to the revenue, patent or copyright laws, or those involving less than five thousand dollars the decision of the Circuit Court of Appeal is final.

**Supreme Court.**—Except when the decision of a Circuit Court of Appeal is final, a party may appeal from its decision to the Supreme Court; and in cases involving such questions as the interpretation of the Constitution or a treaty, the conviction for a crime punishable with death or the jurisdiction of a court, a party can appeal *directly* to the Supreme Court without first having the case reviewed by a Circuit Court of Appeal. It has also been provided by Congress that when a case before the courts of a State involves questions relating to the federal Constitution, laws or treaties, a party can appeal from the highest state court to the Supreme Court.

# JUDICIAL BRANCH.

<b>COURT OF IMPEACHMENT</b> Constitutional Limitations	{ House of Representatives, to impeach } for { Treason, Bribery, Senate, to try impeachments } Other High Crimes and Misdemeanors.	
	{ as to Parties, Subject and Penalties.	
<b>SUPREME COURT</b> (A Chief Justice and Eight Associate Justices)	<b>JURISDICTION</b> { <div> <b>Original</b>  Affecting  When a State is a party. </div> <div> <b>Appellate</b>  Directly from Circuit and District Courts  From Circuit Courts of Appeal and the Court of Claims </div>	{ <div> Ambassadors, Consuls.  Other public ministers. </div> <div> <i>In Cases involving</i>  Jurisdiction of the Court.  Interpretation of Federal Constitution or a treaty.  Application of Federal Law.  Constitution to a State Constitution.  Conviction of capital crime.  In all cases in which the decisions are not final. </div>
		{ <div> Admiralty and Maritime Cases.  Cases for Penalties and Forfeitures.  Bankruptcy Proceedings (generally), etc.  Crimes, not punished by death.  Civil Actions for or against U. S. or an officer.  Infringement of personal rights.  Bankruptcy (certain proceedings), etc.  Crimes, punished by death.  Cases under the Revenue, Patent and Copyright Laws.  Civil Actions, not for or against U. S. or an officer, etc.  Founded on a Law of Congress:  Regulation of any Executive Department.  Contract with the Government.  Referred by either House of Congress.  Of Disbursing Officers to be relieved from disability.  Cases not appealable directly to the Supreme Court.  Involving U. S. or State citizenship. </div> <div> Judgments are final in all cases  Arising under Patents.  Crimes not punished by death.  Admiralty cases.  Civil suits less than \$5,000. </div>
<b>INFERIOR COURTS</b> Of Original Jurisdiction	<b>JURISDICTION</b> { <div> <b>Exclusive</b>  District Courts (District Judge) </div> <div> <b>Concurrent</b>  Circuit Courts (Justice of Supreme Court, Circuit Judge and District Judge, or any two of them) </div> <div> <b>Exclusive</b>  Court of Claims (A Chief Justice and Four Associate Justices) </div>	{ <div> <b>Exclusive</b>  Admiralty and Maritime Cases.  Cases for Penalties and Forfeitures.  Bankruptcy Proceedings (generally), etc.  Crimes, not punished by death.  Civil Actions for or against U. S. or an officer.  Infringement of personal rights.  Bankruptcy (certain proceedings), etc.  Crimes, punished by death.  Cases under the Revenue, Patent and Copyright Laws.  Civil Actions, not for or against U. S. or an officer, etc.  Founded on a Law of Congress:  Regulation of any Executive Department.  Contract with the Government.  Referred by either House of Congress.  Of Disbursing Officers to be relieved from disability.  Cases not appealable directly to the Supreme Court.  Involving U. S. or State citizenship. </div> <div> Judgments are final in all cases  Arising under Patents.  Crimes not punished by death.  Admiralty cases.  Civil suits less than \$5,000. </div>
		{ <div> <b>Claims</b>  Circuit Courts of Appeal (Justice of Supreme Court, two Circuit Judges and a District Judge, or any two of them) </div>
<b>Of Appellate Jurisdiction</b>	{ <div> Circuit Courts of Appeal (Justice of Supreme Court, two Circuit Judges and a District Judge, or any two of them) </div>	{ <div> Judgments are final in all cases  Arising under Patents.  Crimes not punished by death.  Admiralty cases.  Civil suits less than \$5,000. </div>

## SOURCE OF AUTHORITY IN THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT.



# OFFICIAL TERMS AND SALARIES

LEGISLATIVE—	SOURCE OF AUTHORITY	TERM OF OFFICE	SALARY
Senators.....	Elected by State Legislatures	6 years	\$7,500
Representatives.....	Elected by People	2 years	"
Territorial Delegates.....	" "	"	"
Speaker of the House.....	Chosen by House	"	12,000
EXECUTIVE—			
(Civil)			
President .....	Elected by Electors	4 years	75,000
Vice-President .....	" "	"	12,000
Cabinet Officers.....	Appointed by Presi- dent and confirmed by Senate	Will of the President	12,000
Solicitor-General .....	"	"	7,500
Assistant Secretaries .....	"	"	4,500-5,000
Ambassadors.....	"	"	17,500
Ministers Plenipotentiary .....	"	"	10,000-12,000
Ministers Resident .....	"	"	5,000-10,000
Consuls-General .....	"	"	3,000-12,000
Consuls .....	"	"	2,000-8,000
Civil Service Commissioners.....	"	"	4,000-4,500
Interstate Commerce Commissioners	"	"	10,000
District Attorneys.....	"	"	Fees †
Marshals.....	"	"	" †
(Army)			
Lieutenant-General.....	"	Life	11,000
Major-Generals .....	"	"	8,000
Brigadier-Generals .....	"	"	6,000
Colonels .....	"	"	4,000
(Navy)			
Admirals .....	"	"	13,500
Rear-Admirals .....	"	"	6,000-8,000
Captains .....	"	"	4,000
JUDICIAL—			
Chief Justice of the United States..	"	"	13,000
Justices of Supreme Court.....	"	"	12,500
Circuit Judges .....	"	"	7,000
District Judges.....	"	"	6,000
Judges of Court of Claims.....	"	"	6,000-6,500

† Besides the fees allowed, these officers are usually paid \$200 annually.

**The Salary of the Secretary of State.**—The selection of Philander B. Knox, then a Senator from Pennsylvania, for Secretary of State in President Taft's Cabinet caused a temporary reduction in the amount of the salary of that official. The Act increasing the salary of a cabinet officer from \$8,000 to \$12,000 was passed during the term for which Mr. Knox was elected Senator. This fact made him ineligible under Article I, Sec. 6 of the Constitution. To avoid this Congress reduced the salary of the Secretary of State to \$8,000. This amount was again raised to \$12,000 when the term for which Mr. Knox was elected Senator expired, on March 4, 1911.



## CHAPTER V.

### THE STATES AND TERRITORIES.

**National Protection.**—The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence. (Art. IV., Sec. 4.)

Thus is established permanency to republican institutions, not only in the nation as a whole, but in the various States. All the provisions of this section are designed to suppress any effort within or without a State to overthrow its republican government and establish another form in its stead. Even if a State itself should desire a change in its system of government, it would be the duty of the nation to resist such change with all its power, even by force of arms.

**Illustrations.**—A delicate question as to the power of the national government in this capacity arose at the close of the Civil War in the case of the seceding States. There was one opinion that by the act of secession these States had lost all their sovereign rights and were a portion of the territory of the nation. Another opinion was that they still possessed these rights. As a result they were held under military control until it was assured that the state governments were still republican in form and strong enough to maintain themselves.

The national government is also the natural protector of the States in the case of foreign invasion or domestic troubles. In the latter instance its power has frequently been exercised, particularly in the case of the Dorr Rebellion (1842), and later during the great railroad strike of 1877, when the state authorities were unable to enforce the laws, preserve order or protect property.

**Form of State Governments.**—As a result of this provision there are, besides the national government, as many governments, independent so far as their local affairs are concerned, as there are States. Each of these is a republic with an executive, called a “Governor,” who resembles the President in his powers and duties, a judicial branch, and a legislative branch consisting of two houses similar in organization to the Senate and House of Representatives, but with more varied powers than those of Congress.

**“State Rights.”**—The relation of a State to the Union was for many years one of the most important questions which confronted our statesmen. One class maintained that the States could withdraw from the Union at any time they desired. The contrary opinion was that, having surrendered to the federal government certain sovereign rights, they could not reassume them at their own will. For years this discussion engaged the ablest minds of the country, and at times nearly led to open conflict. The act of the State of South Carolina in resisting the collection of duties during the administration of President Jackson was such an instance. At length this difference of opinion came to be marked sectionally, civil war followed, and the question of secession was settled

forever. The principle determined by the war is stated by Chief Justice Waite as follows:

All the rights of the States as independent nations were surrendered to the United States. The States are not nations, either as between themselves or towards foreign nations. They are sovereign within their spheres, but their sovereignty stops short of nationality.

**State Comity.**—For the sake of uniformity and the promotion of justice between the several States, it was provided that :

Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof. (Art. IV., Sec. 1.)

This provision does not extend the power of a State beyond its borders, but is intended to make valid in all parts of the Union the acts of a State in the exercise of its lawful powers. Thus, judgments of the courts of one State cannot be questioned in any other, and records of the title of property are conclusive in every State. If this were not so, and if questions once determined could be reopened to litigation in other States, the greatest confusion and injustice would result from the difficulty of presenting evidence to the courts.

**Rights of Citizens.**—The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States. (Art. IV., Sec. 2, Cl. 1.)

This has been already considered. (See page 98.) It was not, however, intended that a person under obliga-

tions to a State could free himself by removing to another State. For—

A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime. (Art. IV., Sec. 2, Cl. 2.)

This demand and surrender are called “Extradition,” and Congress has provided rules for its exercise. Its value is seen in the means it affords of bringing criminals to justice. If there were not such a provision, and if it were possible for a man by fleeing from the State where the crime was committed to escape the penalties attached, crimes would increase and every State would become an asylum for rogues and criminals from other States.

**Fugitive Slaves.**—No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due. (Art. IV., Sec. 2, Cl. 3.)

When it was adopted, this was an important provision. It was demanded by the delegates of the “slave” States as a protection to their property. At that time Massachusetts had prohibited slavery within its borders, and it was disappearing in other Northern States. It was seen that without the existence of the relation of master and servant there would be no means of compelling the return of a runaway slave who had escaped to a “free” State. The enforcement of this provision during the slavery agitation met with great opposition in some places, and was often evaded ; and its “injustice” was one of the most



powerful arguments used by the anti-slavery agitators. The Civil War and the abolition of slavery rendered the section practically obsolete, for although it included apprentices and others bound to service, it is now of little effect.

**Federal Territory.**—The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State. (Art. IV., Sec. 3, Cl. 2.)

At the time of the adoption of the Constitution the vast territory lying between the States and the Mississippi River had, with the exception of a portion belonging to Georgia and North Carolina, been ceded to the general government, and very properly power was given to Congress to make rules respecting this territory, with a proviso protecting the rights of Georgia and North Carolina. These States subsequently relinquished their claims to this land, and the proviso is now of no effect.

**Acquisition of Territory.**—From time to time since the adoption of the Constitution large tracts have been added to the national domain. In 1803 we acquired by purchase from France the territory then known as Louisiana. In 1819 Florida was ceded to us by Spain. Texas joined of its own will in 1845, and the Mexican War (1848) and Purchase (1853) added the Southwestern territory. Alaska was purchased in 1867 from Russia, while more recently the annexation of Hawaii (1898) and the cessions following the war with Spain (1898) have further increased our possessions. The Constitution is silent upon the power

to acquire new territory, but on the theory that as a sovereign power the nation possesses all the rights of sovereignty, among which is the right to acquire territory, the exercise of this power by the Government has been generally acquiesced in. This is particularly true when such acquisition has been made by purchase or the consent of the people of the territory annexed, and while there has been question as to the right to obtain lands by conquest, the prevailing opinion has been favorable to the existence of such right. This sentiment is stated very clearly by Pomeroy in his "Constitutional Law."

Congress may declare war, and the President, as Commander-in-chief, may wage war. One of the most common results of war is conquest, and unless the wars of this country are to be carried on differently from those of other nations, and unless we are to be deprived of the advantages of success, the possibility of conquest must be considered as included within the capacity to declare and wage war. The President, with the advice and consent of two thirds of the Senate, may make treaties. No kinds of treaties are specified, no limitations are placed; the language is as broad as possible; indeed, these international compacts are expressly declared to be the supreme law of the land. No species of treaty is more common than that of cession; and unless we would interpolate a restriction which the language of the Constitution does not require, and thereby place the United States in a condition of inferiority to all other countries, we must admit that territory may be acquired by treaty.

And the Supreme Court of the United States, through Chief Justice Marshall, has said:

The Constitution confers absolutely on the government the powers of making war and of making treaties. Consequently that government possesses the power of acquiring territory either by conquest or treaty.

**Congressional Power over Territory.**—Over territory so acquired Congress has, for a time, exercised exclusive control. In order to secure settlers and build up States, it has enacted general laws for the sale of lands and the making of grants and loans, and has established a system for the survey of vast tracts and the regulation of titles. But the disposition of public lands is only a small part of this power of Congress. It can enact local laws for the Territories, regulating the ordinary intercourse of individuals, the procedure of courts, the chartering of railroads, and, in a word, can perform all other legislative acts which can be done by the legislature of a State.

**Territorial Government.**—Congress has not, however, continued this local control. From time to time various sections have been organized into *Territories*, over which local governments have been established. The system varies in certain details, but in the main it is the same in all. The government is republican, and forms a fitting school for subsequent statehood.

**Territorial Officers.**—The executive officer is a Governor appointed by the President, with the consent of the Senate, for a term of four years. He must reside in the Territory and is Commander-in-chief of the territorial militia. He may grant pardons and reprieves and remit fines, but his action in these matters is subject to reversal by the President. He has also a limited veto power. A Secretary is appointed in the same manner and for the same term as the Governor, who, besides being the custodian of all territorial papers, and the recorder of the laws and proceedings of the legislature, performs the duties of Governor during a vacancy in that office.

There are also a Treasurer, a Chief Justice and Associate Justices, District Attorney, Marshal, and Superintendent of Education, all appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate.

**Territorial Legislature.**—The legislative branch consists of two houses, the members of which are elected by districts every two years by popular vote. The legislative power extends to “all rightful subjects of legislation, not inconsistent with the Constitution and laws of the United States. But no laws can be passed interfering with the disposal of the soil. No tax shall be imposed upon property of the United States. Nor shall the lands or other property of non-residents be taxed higher than the lands or other property of residents.” But all acts, besides being subject to the veto of the Governor, may be annulled by an Act of Congress.

**Territorial Judiciary.**—The judicial branch consists of a Chief Justice and at least two Associate Justices of the Supreme Court of the Territory, appointed by the President, and Justices of the Peace elected by the people. Each territory is divided into as many Judicial Districts as there are Supreme Court Justices, and the Supreme Court has both original and appellate jurisdiction. Appeals therefrom are taken to the Supreme Court of the United States.

**Territorial Citizenship.**—The Territories have no part in the election of President, nor have they Senators or Representatives, though each is entitled to one Delegate to the House of Representatives. Of the position of a citizen of an organized Territory, Bryce in his “American Commonwealth” says:



What may be called his private or passive citizenship is complete. He has all the immunities and benefits which an American citizen enjoys. But the public or active side is wanting, so far as the National Government is concerned, although complete for local purposes.

**The District of Columbia.**—The government of the District of Columbia differs to such an extent from that of the Territories as to require special mention. Congress has exclusive control of this District (Art. I., Sec. 8, Cl. 17). All laws are made by Congress and enforced by a Commission consisting of an officer of the Corps of Engineers of the Army of a higher rank than captain, and two civilians, citizens of the United States and residents of the District, appointed by the President with the consent of the Senate, for a term of three years. The Commission is authorized to make police and other municipal regulations, collect and apply taxes to the support of schools and other public purposes, and exercise all the powers usually vested in the governing body of cities, but the local taxes are fixed by Congress. The Judiciary of the District consist of a Supreme Court with a Chief Justice and six Associate Justices, which has general jurisdiction of law and equity. From this court appeals can be taken to the Court of Appeals of the District, consisting of three Judges, to which court is also taken any appeal from the decision of the Commissioner of Patents. From the Court of Appeals appeals may be taken to the Supreme Court of the United States.

**Admission of States.**—New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State

be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress. (Art. IV., Sec. 3, Cl. 1.)

How long a Territory shall remain such is a question to be determined by Congress alone, and its action is not affected by the population, wealth or the extent of the Territory. Political interests, as the retention of party power, and national questions, as slavery, have influenced the action of Congress to a large extent. For a long time there was no uniformity as to the population necessary for admission, and great discrimination has been shown from time to time in favor of Territories in which it was supposed the sentiment on great questions was the same as that of the dominant political party in Congress. There is now a rule which provides that no Territory will be admitted as a State until it has a population sufficient to entitle it to a representative in Congress.

**Methods of Admission.**—States are usually admitted in one of two ways. Either Congress passes an “enabling act,” by which the people are authorized to adopt a constitution in which certain provisions may be required to be inserted, upon performance of which the Territory becomes a State ; or, the people of a Territory submit a constitution to Congress, and upon its approval the Territory becomes a State.

**Limitation.**—The limitation placed upon the power of Congress to form States was designed as a protection to the large States which feared that they might be divided, and the small States, which feared that they might be consolidated into large States, and is another example of the compromises made in the Constitutional Convention.

## GOVERNMENTAL FORMS IN STATES AND TERRITORIES.

## STATES:

{	Legislative	{ Senate Lower House	{	Elected by the people.
	Executive	{ Governor		
{	Judicial	{ Appellate Courts Courts of Original Jurisdiction	{	Elected by the people or Appointed by Governor.

## TERRITORIES:

Legislative	U. S. Congress	Council House of Representatives } Elected by the people. Limited by veto of Governor and act of Congress.
	Territorial Legislature	
Executive	Governor Secretary Treasurer District Attorney Marshal Superintendent of Education	Appointed by President with consent of Senate.
Judicial	Supreme Court	Chief Justice } Appointed by President Associate Justices } with consent of Senate.
	Justices of the Peace	
TERRITORIES become STATES		by Act of Congress with Constitution adopted { before } after } Act of Congress.

## CHAPTER VI.

### GENERAL PROVISIONS.

**National Credit.**—Credit gives stability in national as well as in private concerns. A nation can better lose its armies than its credit. In consequence of these truths there was inserted in the Constitution a provision that:

All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation. (Art. VI., Cl. 1.)

And later, after the accumulation of an enormous debt through the Civil War, an additional pledge was inserted in Amendment XIV. that:

The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrections or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

**The Supreme Law.**—This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in



the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding. (Art. VI., Cl. 2.)

Every governmental act repugnant to the Constitution is null and void. So also with the federal laws and treaties, of which the Supreme Court of the United States has said:

In every case of conflict, the Act of Congress or treaty is supreme, and the law of the State, though enacted in the exercise of uncontroverted powers, must yield to it.

As between federal laws and treaties, it is the rule that the one last made is the superior.

**Oath.**—The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation, to *support this Constitution*; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States. (Art. VI., Cl. 3.)

**Amendments.**—The Congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that *no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.* (Art. V.)

**Ratification.**—The ratification of the conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same. (Art. VII.)

## CHAPTER VII.

### AMENDMENTS.

**Bill of Rights.**—The most frequent objection to the Constitution, before it was adopted by the States, was the absence of any provision asserting and guaranteeing the inherent rights of the people. The possibility that a strong central government might become as tyrannical as that of George III. aroused grave apprehension, and to quiet this fear Congress, at its first session, proposed twelve amendments and submitted them to the States for ratification. Of these, ten were adopted in 1791. The first eight constitute what is called the “Bill of Rights,” a name adopted from the English Bill of Rights.

**Freedom of Religion and Press.**—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof ; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press ; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances. (Amendment I.)

The colonization of this country had been largely due to the attempts of the people to find freedom of worship, and this amendment was intended to guarantee its continuance. It does not, however, deprive the Government of its right and duty to recognize the teachings of religion ; nor does it deter the Government from abolishing

polygamy and other immoralities when practiced under the guise of religion. This amendment also guarantees the right to freely and publicly discuss all questions relating to the conduct and policy of the Government, and asserts the right of the people to assemble and petition, the denial of which was enumerated among the grievances set forth in the Declaration of Independence. It does not, however, allow men to injure the reputation of their fellows by slander or libel.

**Arms.**—A well-regulated militia, being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed. (Amendment II.)

**Quartering of Troops.**—No soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law. (Amendment III.)

Both of these provisions were taken from the English Bill of Rights, and cover grievances enumerated in the Declaration of Independence.

**Searches.**—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized. (Amendment IV.)

This provision is for the protection of the people against such abuses as occurred under the Writs of Assistance. It does not prevent searches and seizures which are necessary for the recovery of stolen property ; but it places the practice under such regulations as to protect all parties in their rights.

**Rights of Accused.**—No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall he be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation. (Amendment V.)

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense. (Amendment VI.)

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted. (Amendment VIII.)

These three amendments are intended as a protection to persons accused of crime. A *capital crime* is one of such magnitude as to be punishable by death. An *infamous crime* is one denoting a depraved mind and punishable by long imprisonment.

**Indictment.**—A *grand jury* is a body of men selected by lot at stated periods from among the citizens of a defined district to inquire concerning crimes committed within their districts. In most States it cannot consist of more than twenty-three nor less than sixteen persons. The grand jury usually considers only those cases submitted to it by an officer of the court, and in secret session takes the testimony of witnesses as to the commission of a crime, and decides whether the evidence is



sufficient to warrant an accusation. This decision requires the concurrence of twelve men. If it is deemed proper, an *indictment*—that is, a written accusation charging a person with the commission of the crime—is presented to the court, and the person therein accused of the offense is held for trial. A *presentment* is an informal accusation of a crime made by a grand jury upon its own knowledge in cases not submitted to it by an officer of the court. As a preliminary to a criminal prosecution the latter has fallen into general disuse in this country.

**Bail.**—*Bail* is the deposit by an accused person of a certain sum of money with the officers of the court, or a bond given by responsible persons to pay a certain sum of money to the Government, if the accused does not obey the orders of the court, such as to appear for trial.

**Trial.**—The accused is entitled to a speedy and public trial, and can demand that it be by a *jury*, which is a body of men selected by lot from the district within which the crime was committed, and who are sworn to impartially decide the guilt or innocence of the accused. Such a jury is called a *petit jury*. The accused is also entitled to know the charges against him, to hear and examine the witnesses sworn, and the Government must provide him with counsel, if he is unable to do so himself. He cannot be compelled to testify, nor can his refusal to do so be considered an indication of his guilt. Moreover, he can only be tried once for the same offense, unless the jury fails to agree or unless he secures a new trial.

**Protection to Property.**—Amendment V., besides guaranteeing life and liberty to the individual, granted him protection in his property rights, but the Government is

not deprived thereby of its right to take private property for public purposes whenever necessity demands. This right of the Government is called the *Right of Eminent Domain*, and unless it existed individuals might obstruct and even prevent necessary public acts. Thus the Government may appropriate property for roads, docks and other improvements, but it must pay a fair market value for it, which, unless the owner and the officials can agree, is determined by a jury of impartial men.

**Jury Trial in Civil Suits.**—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury, shall be otherwise reëxamined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law. (Amendment VII.)

**Powers Reserved.**—The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people. (Amendment IX.)

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people. (Amendment X.)

**Eleventh and Twelfth Amendments.**—No further amendments were made to the Constitution until 1798, when the Eleventh was adopted. (See page 163.) In 1804 Amendment XII. was added. (See page 123.)

**Slavery.**—It was not until 1865 that any further amendments were made, when the slavery question was settled by the adoption of Amendment XIII.

Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction. Congress shall have authority to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

**The Freedmen.**—The freedmen thus created were made citizens and their rights were defined by Amendment XIV. (See pages 61, 96, 99 and 181.) This amendment, in order to extend the provisions of the “Bill of Rights” to the new citizens, further provided that no State shall

deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

Amendment XV., made in 1870, was the final step in granting full rights of citizenship to the freedmen. By the Thirteenth Amendment their freedom had been recognized. By the Fourteenth they have been declared citizens and their civil rights have been enumerated. The Fifteenth extended to them political rights under the limitations imposed by the laws of the several States by providing that:

The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

**Object of Amendments.** — The province of the amendments is briefly stated by Judge Cooley, as follows:

The first amendments were for the purpose of keeping the central power within due limits at a time when the tendency to centralization was alarming to many persons; the last were adopted to impose new restraints on State sovereignty at a time when State powers had nearly succeeded in destroying the national sovereignty.

## CONSTITUTIONAL RIGHTS OF PRIVATE CITIZENS.

## Private Rights, “Bill of Rights.”

Freedom of	{	Religion.		
		Speech.		
		Press.		
Right to bear arms.				
Prohibiting	{	Quartering troops.		
		Search warrants (general).		
		Confiscation of	Houses.	
			Papers.	
		Effects.		
Right, if accused of a crime	{	To be indicted by Grand Jury.		
		<i>Not</i> to be	Twice tried for same offense.	
			Compelled to testify.	
		To have a	Speedy <i>and</i>	Trial.
			Public	
		To be confronted by	{	Witnesses.
To compel attendance of				
Right to Jury Trial in	{	<i>Not</i> to be	Required excessive bail.	
			Subject to	cruel <i>or</i>
		unusual		
		Right to	{	Criminal
Civil				
Life	{			and can only be deprived by due process of law.
Liberty				
Property				

## Public Rights.

{	Prohibiting	{	Slavery.	[ment for crime.
		{	Involuntary servitude, except for punish-	
{	Not to deny right to vote on account of	{	Race.	
		{	Color.	
		{	Previous condition of servitude.	



## PART FOURTH.

### PRINCIPLES OF LAW.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### INTERNATIONAL LAW.

**Definition.**—International Law, or the Law of Nations, in its commonly accepted meaning, is the code of rules which civilized nations recognize by consent and usage as that which should govern their mutual intercourse. In a more general sense it comprises those principles of natural right and justice which should regulate international conduct.

##### *1. RULES IN TIME OF PEACE.*

**Divisions.**—Rules in time of peace may be divided into four classes—those relating to (1) Sovereignty, (2) Territory, (3) Aliens and (4) Intercourse.

##### 1. SOVEREIGNTY.

**Recognition of Sovereignty.**—Every state or nation is independent and sovereign, and the equal in that respect of every other state in the world, without regard to the extent, power or character of its government. In a nation with a federal form of government, this rule applies to the central government alone.

**Intervention.**—It is a violation of a nation's sovereignty to interfere with its domestic affairs or to intervene in case of civil war. However, in extreme cases, intervention is considered justifiable upon the ground of humanity, as when a government is conducting a war with great cruelty, or to "maintain the balance of power," as where a nation whose increase of power may become a menace to its neighbors is restrained in its aggression upon a weaker state. This has often happened in Europe. Of somewhat the same character was the Monroe Doctrine, promulgated in 1823, which declared that the United States would "consider any attempt on the part of the allied European powers to extend their system to any portion of our hemisphere as dangerous to our peace and safety."

## 2. TERRITORY.

**Definition.**—The land over which a state has exclusive political control is its territory, and its rights of government are called *territorial rights*. Such territory may be acquired either by discovery and occupation, by possession for a long time, by conquest or by gift or purchase. The transfer of territory from one nation to another is termed *cession*. A state bounded by the ocean, or *high seas*, possesses territorial rights over a strip of water three marine miles wide extending along its coasts and over the sea between adjacent headlands. Such a strip of sea is termed *territorial waters*. Rivers flowing between two states belong to both, but rivers passing from one state into another are part of the territory of each state while within its boundaries.

The ships of a nation in the territorial waters of another nation must obey its laws, but on the high seas they are subject only to the laws of their own country.

### 3. ALIENS.

**Definition.**—*Aliens* are persons within a country other than that to which they owe allegiance. They are generally subject to the laws of the state where they are, but this rule does not apply to sovereigns, their diplomatic representatives, or to the ships of war and military forces of other states.

**Rights.**—A *domiciled alien*—that is, one having a residence or a domicile—cannot usually own land or take part in the government, but he may hold other property, make contracts and claim protection of the courts, and is subject to taxation and to the requirements usually imposed upon citizens. Aliens, however, who are travelers only, are exempt from many of these duties and are entitled to special privileges.

**Naturalization.**—An alien may become a citizen of the country of his domicile by taking an oath of allegiance to the government. This is called *naturalization*, and nearly all nations now recognize that this act severs the relationship of the person with the country to which he formerly owed allegiance. This severance of relationship is called *expatriation*.

**Criminals and Extradition.**—Aliens who are fugitives from justice are subject to special rules. If their crimes are of a political nature they will not generally be given up on the demand of another government, but if they

have committed felonies, they are usually surrendered to the state in which the crime was committed. This is called *extradition*.

#### 4. INTERCOURSE.

**Treaties.**—The most important duty devolving upon diplomatic representatives (see page 132) is the negotiation of treaties. The usual subjects of treaties are peace and friendship, commercial privileges, postal service, extradition, fisheries, boundaries, annexation and the settlement of claims. There are also treaties which establish Joint High Commissions, Mixed Commissions and Tribunals of Arbitration for the settlement of controversies.

**International Commissions and Arbitration.**—A *joint high commission* is constituted of an equal number of commissioners from each country, and matters upon which they may disagree are usually submitted to an *umpire*, named by the two interested governments or by the chief magistrate of another nation, and the decision of the umpire is final. In some instances the umpire sits with the commissioners during their sessions, in which case the body is termed a *mixed commission*. A *tribunal of arbitration* is generally distinguished from a mixed commission by the importance of the subject submitted to it, and because more than one nation besides the parties to the controversy appoint arbitrators. International arbitration is becoming more and more employed by governments, and all questions in dispute are considered proper for arbitration except those that involve a nation's honor or dignity, such as an insult to its flag or official representatives.



## 2. RULES IN TIME OF WAR.

**War.**—*War* is a public contention between two governments through the agency of their armies and navies. An insurrection which is not sufficient to support a form of government is not a war, but when the insurgents are strong enough to maintain a government, an uprising of this character becomes a *civil war*.

**Condition of States between Peace and War.**—When a nation has suffered a wrong for which satisfaction is refused, it may, before an actual appeal to arms, employ reprisal or embargo to obtain redress. A *reprisal* is the seizure and retention of the ships and property of the citizens of an offending state until satisfaction is accorded. An *embargo* is the detention by a nation of the ships and cargoes within its ports. It is the duty of a government, before commencing war, to exhaust every means to obtain a peaceful settlement of the difficulty. The last demand for satisfaction which is made upon an offending state is termed an *ultimatum*. It is usually peremptory in style, and limits the time for compliance, and if the other nation refuses to agree to its terms, war follows. The commencement of a war divides nations into two classes, those who are actually engaged in the war, called *belligerents* (war-wagers), and those who are not, called *neutrals* (neither-sided).

## 3. OBLIGATIONS OF BELLIGERENTS TO EACH OTHER.

**Treaties.**—As a rule, all treaties between two contending nations are abrogated or abolished by the commencement of war, but a treaty relating to the method of

conducting hostilities and those which recognize a state's independence or fix its boundaries are not affected.

**Citizens.**—Theoretically, all the citizens and residents of belligerent states, as well as the governments, are hostile to each other, and they are liable to detention and their goods to seizure ; but this rule has been much modified by the growing sentiment against causing non-combatants to suffer for the public wrongs done by their government.

**Conduct of Hostilities.**—The rules of civilized warfare are intended to lessen as much as possible the horrors and sufferings which it inflicts upon the individual. The most important rules prohibit a belligerent from:

1. The employment of savages against an enemy ;
2. The unnecessary infliction of suffering to the people and injury to the private property of an enemy, as in the case of massacre and pillage ;
3. The inhuman treatment of prisoners ;
4. The confiscation of private property, except when justified by necessity ;
5. The use of poison and poisoned weapons.

**Communications.**—The communications between hostile armies are carried on by means of *flags of truce* and *cartels*. The first are employed for any communication between belligerents, while the latter are agreements for the exchange of prisoners.

**Rules on Sea.**—The restrictions imposed upon a belligerent apply chiefly to hostilities upon land, and have not been so generally applied to naval operations. The vessels and cargoes owned by the citizens of an enemy may, therefore, be seized by a hostile government. *Letters of*

*marque and reprisal* are commissions issued to vessels termed *privateers* fitted out by private citizens, which entitle them to capture the vessels belonging to the citizens of an enemy. Privateering has, however, fallen into general disuse since 1856, when it was discontinued by the European nations under the "Agreement of Paris."

**Capture and Prize.**—The seizure of an enemy's ship or cargo is termed *capture*, and the property is called *prize*. The title to a prize does not pass to the captor until it has been decreed by a court, known as a *prize court*, which is given jurisdiction in such cases by the belligerent government.

**Truce, and Termination of War.**—Hostilities may be temporarily suspended for a definite time by an agreement termed a *truce* or *armistice*. A war is terminated and peace restored by a proclamation of sovereignty by the conquering nation or by a treaty between the belligerents. A *treaty of peace* usually contains agreements as to the disposal of prisoners, the withdrawal of military forces, the cession of territory, the payment of indemnity and other subjects of a like nature.

#### 4. OBLIGATIONS OF NEUTRALS AND BELLIGERENTS TO EACH OTHER.

**Recognition of Belligerency.**—A *state of neutrality* exists only when there is a war. It is important, therefore, for a nation to determine whether an armed contention is a civil war or an insurrection. This may be shown by the acts of a government in relation to its rebellious citi-

zens, such as the proclamation of a blockade of insurgent ports or official negotiations with the insurgent government. Under these circumstances other governments will recognize the belligerency of the rebels. So, also, a nation will recognize the belligerency of insurgents when it is convinced that they have established a stable and responsible government. It is the duty of neutrals to act with impartiality towards both belligerents. They must not permit the enlistment of men for the armies or navies of either belligerent. They must not allow the ships of either to be built or fitted out in their ports, nor must they loan money to either. The citizens of a neutral nation are also prohibited from carrying contraband of war and from attempting to break a blockade.

**Contraband of War.**—*Contraband of war* comprises articles which may be employed in carrying on war, such as arms, munitions, ships, beasts of burden, and in some cases even money and provisions ; and belligerents possess the right to seize such articles when found in a neutral ship, unless in the waters of a neutral nation. The vessel and the remainder of the cargo, however, are exempted from seizure unless they belong to the owner of the contraband goods.

**Blockade.**—A *blockade* is the right to prevent and make unlawful all trade and intercourse with certain specified ports or portions of the enemy's coast. It is enforced by means of a fleet which intercepts vessels which attempt to enter or leave the blockaded territory. As blockade is purely a war right, a nation cannot blockade its own ports ; and therefore, in the case of an insurrection, the proclamation of a blockade of coasts held by



insurgents is a recognition of their belligerency. Any attempt to violate a blockade subjects a ship to capture, provided that the blockade is *actual*—that is, that there is sufficient naval force present to maintain it ; that the offending neutral had knowledge that a blockade existed ; and that there was an attempt to “run the blockade.”

**Visit and Search.**—In order to make the rules as to contraband of war and blockade effective, a belligerent possesses the right of *visit and search*, by which its cruisers are authorized to stop and examine ships on the high seas for the purpose of ascertaining their nationality, destination and the character of their cargoes. And to this right neutrals must submit.

## INTERNATIONAL LAW.

### RULES IN TIME OF PEACE.

#### Sovereignty :

{	<i>Recognition of Sovereignty</i>	{ Equality.
		{ Independence.
{	<i>Intervention because of</i>	{ Balance of power.
		{ Monroe Doctrine.
		{ Humanity.

#### Territory :

{	<i>Acquisition by</i>	{ Discovery and occupation.
		{ Prescription.
		{ Conquest.
		{ Gift or purchase.
{	<i>Rights over</i>	{ Territory.
		{ Territorial waters.
		{ Rivers.
		{ Ships.

**Aliens:**

{	<i>Exempt from Rules</i>	{	Sovereigns.
			Diplomatic representatives.
			Public ships.
			Military forces.
{	<i>Domiciled</i>	{	Rights to
			{ Hold personal property.
			{ Make contracts.
			Appeal to courts.
			Duties—those of a citizen.
	<i>Temporarily Resident</i>	{	Rights—special privileges.
			Duties—obedience to laws.
	<i>Naturalization.</i>		
	<i>Extradition.</i>		

**Intercourse:**

{	<i>Diplomatic Channels</i>	{	Ambassadors.
			Ministers.
			Diplomatic Agents.
			Chargés d'Affaires.
{	<i>Treaties</i>	{	Peace and friendship.
			Commercial privileges.
			Postal service.
			Extradition.
			Annexation.
			Fishery rights.
			Boundaries.
			Claims.
{	<i>Arbitration</i>	{	Joint High Commissions.
			Mixed commissions.
			Tribunals of arbitration.

## RULES IN TIME OF WAR.

<i>Acts prior to Actual War</i>	{	Reprisals.
		Embargoes.
		Ultimatum.

## I. OBLIGATIONS OF BELLIGERENTS TO EACH OTHER.

## Effects on Relations:

{	<i>Public</i>	{	Treaties	{	Not abrogated, when <i>final</i> .
					Abrogated, when <i>not final</i>
{	<i>Private</i>	{	Liability	{	Detention of person.
					Seizure of property.

## Conduct of Hostilities on Land:

{	<i>Hostile Acts Prohibited</i>	{	Employment of savages.
			Massacre and pillage.
			Inhumanity to prisoners.
			Confiscation of private property.
			Use of poison.
{	<i>Communica- tion by</i>	{	Flags of truce.
			Cartels.

## Conduct of Hostilities at Sea:

<i>Capture and Prize</i>	{	by public ships.
		by privateers.

## Cessation of Hostilities:

*Truces.*

## Termination of War—by Treaty:

<i>Subjects of Peace Treaties</i>	{	Disposal of prisoners.
		Withdrawal of troops.
		Cession of territory.
		Payment of indemnity.
		Etc., etc.

## II. OBLIGATIONS OF NEUTRALS AND BELLIGERENTS TO EACH OTHER.

### Belligerency :

*Recognition of* { By act of other belligerent { Proclamation of blockade.  
Negotiations with other party.  
By neutral.

### Neutrality :

*Violation of* { By neutral nation { Enlistment of men.  
Fitting out ships.  
Loaning money.

### Neutral Trade :

{ *Prohibitions* { To carry contraband of war { Arms.  
Munitions.  
Ships.  
Beasts of burden.  
Money and provisions (in some cases).  
To break a blockade when { Blockade is actual.  
Neutral had knowledge  
Attempt to break it.  
{ *Visit and Search.*



## CHAPTER II.

### MUNICIPAL LAW.

**Definitions.**—Municipal Law consists of those rules of conduct prescribed by the supreme power of a state to regulate the relations between the state and its citizens, or between the citizens themselves. It is either *written* or *unwritten*. The unwritten law of this country comprises Common Law and Equity (see page 162). The written law of the United States consists of the Federal Constitution, the Acts of Congress and Treaties. The written law of a State consists of its constitution and statutes. A *statute* is a law established by the legislature of a State.

**Object.**—The object of Municipal Law is to protect rights and punish wrongs. Rights are of two kinds—*political* and *civil* (see page 4). So, also, wrongs are of two kinds—public, or *crimes*, and private, or *torts*.

#### 1. CIVIL RIGHTS.

##### 1. ABSOLUTE RIGHTS.

**Personal Security.**—This includes the *right of life*, the violation of which is one of the gravest of crimes ; and the *right of reputation*—that is, the favorable opinion of others—defamation of which, if oral, is *slander*, and if by writing or printing, *libel*.

**Personal Liberty.**—This is the natural right of every person to move about or remain at rest, except as he is restrained by law.

**Personal Property.**—This is the natural right of every person to acquire, use and dispose of property in any manner save as he is restrained by law. *Property* is that which can be exclusively owned or enjoyed, as a horse, a house, or land. But air, light and the unconfined forces of nature, although capable of enjoyment, are not property.

**Divisions of Property.**—Property is divided into real and personal. *Real property* is that which is considered immovable, as land. *Personal property*, also called *chattels*, is that which is considered movable, as horses and machinery. Real property includes lands and certain rights connected with the use of land, such as a *right of way*, or passage over the lands of another; a *franchise*, or the right to exercise certain privileges, such as to build and manage railroads; and *rent*, or the right to receive a regular profit from lands. Personal property consists of tangible movable objects, of certain minor rights connected with real property, and of such property as stocks, promissory notes, copyrights and debts.

**Estates in Real Property.**—The interest of a person in property is called an *estate*. Estates in real property are *real estate*, which is a permanent and unending interest, and *personal estate*, which is one with some termination. Real estates in real property are of two kinds—an *estate in fee*, which gives the owner power to absolutely dispose of the property, and which, if not disposed of, descends to his heirs; and an *estate for life*, which gives the owner

power only to use the property during his life or during the life of another. Among the most important life estates is an *estate in dower*, which is one that a surviving wife has in one third of the real property owned by her husband at any time during their married life, and which was not disposed of with her consent.

**Leases.**—The most important personal estate in real property is an *estate for years*, which begins and ends at specified dates and is created by an instrument called a *lease*. The *lessee* or *tenant* does not own the land, but has the right to its use during the term of the lease. He is usually required to make ordinary repairs to the premises, and to pay to the *lessor* or *landlord* a fixed amount for the use of the premises, called *rent*. If the tenant does not pay his rent as agreed, the landlord may cause him to be removed from the premises. This is called *eviction*.

**Estates in Personal Property.**—Estates in personal property are of two kinds—*absolute*, one that cannot be destroyed without the act of the owner ; and *qualified*, one that can be destroyed or lost without the act of the owner, such as that in wild animals.

**Title.**—*Title* is the right of ownership of an estate. Titles to real property are of two kinds—by *descent*, as where an heir inherits the estate from his ancestor ; and by *purchase*, which includes all other means of acquisition. The most common title by purchase is that created by *act of the parties*, which includes title by grant and title by devise. *Title by grant* is either *public*—that is, a title from the United States or a State by an instrument called a *patent* ; or *private*—that is, from another person by a written instrument called a *deed*. *Title by*

*devise* is that obtained by a written instrument called a *will*.

Title to personal property may be acquired either by the *sole act of the owner*, such as that in property which a person produces, or in a wild animal which he captures ; by *operation of law*, such as that acquired in the personal property of a relative who died without leaving a last will and testament ; and by the *joint act of the present and former owners*, such as that created by a gift, last will and testament or contract. *Title by gift* is that which a person has in property gratuitously transferred to him. *Title by last will and testament* is that by which one becomes the owner of personal property of a deceased person by the last will and testament of such person. *Title by contract* is that by which a person becomes the owner of personal property through its voluntary transfer to him by another for some consideration.

**Contracts.**—A *contract* is an agreement between two or more persons to do or not to do some thing. Four conditions are necessary to a complete contract: (a) Parties able to contract ; (b) a sufficient consideration ; (c) a subject to be contracted for ; and (d) an actual agreement, or, as it is called, a “meeting of the minds.”

**Parties.**—Parties able to contract must be of full age. Contracts by minors, except for necessary articles of support, are not binding upon them. They must be of full understanding. Contracts made with idiots or others deprived of their minds are of no effect, as against them. They must also be free to contract. Any agreement made by a person under restraint or force is not binding upon him.



**Consideration.**—A *consideration* is (a) something of value to the person receiving it, or of detriment to the person giving it, (b) love and affection existing between a parent and child or husband and wife, or (c) mutual promises made between persons at the same time.

**Subject.**—The subject of a contract must be something real, as property, service or labor. It must also be lawful and moral. Contracts for smuggling or other unlawful acts are not binding.

**Classes of Contracts.**—Contracts are either *oral*—that is, by word of mouth—or *written*. Written contracts are either under seal—that is, with a seal affixed to the signature—or without seal. The most common forms of contracts under seal are deeds and mortgages.

**Deeds.**—A *deed* is defined as a writing, signed, sealed and delivered between the parties. It is the instrument by which private grants of land are made. The person making the deed is called the *grantor*; the person to whom it is made, the *grantee*. A deed must name the parties, describe the consideration, the property and estate conveyed, and contain the signature and seal of the grantor. The most common deeds are *quitclaim* deeds, by which the grantor disposes merely of his interest in the property, and *warranty* deeds, by which the grantor guarantees that he is the owner of the property and promises to protect the grantee in his possession. The *execution* of a deed is the actual signing and affixing of a seal. In most States, before a deed can be placed on record, the grantor is required to acknowledge that he executed the deed before an officer, such as a judge, justice of the peace or notary public, who must certify to

the fact in writing upon the instrument. The deed so executed and acknowledged is of no effect unless it is actually delivered to the grantee.

**Mortgages.**—*Mortgages* resemble deeds in that they are transfers of interest in real property, and require the same formality in their execution, acknowledgment and delivery. They do not, however, constitute actual transfers of the title, like deeds, but only a claim to the property as security for the payment of some indebtedness. A mortgage must contain a description of the parties, called the *mortgagor* and *mortgagee*, the consideration, the property mortgaged, and, among other things, a clause stating that the grant is made as security for the payment of some indebtedness, with the terms of payment, and that upon such payment the grant becomes void. Mortgages usually accompany *bonds*, which are obligations to pay certain moneys at certain times. They are then spoken of as *collateral security*, because they can only be enforced in case the conditions of the bond are not fulfilled. A mortgage is enforced by *foreclosure*, which is a legal remedy by which the property described in the mortgage can be sold and the proceeds applied to the payment of the debt. It is usual in the case of both deeds and mortgages for a wife to join in the execution with her husband. In this way only is the property relieved of her dower interest which she has in it by reason of the marriage.

**Protection to Grantees and Mortgagees.**—For the purpose of avoiding difficulties it is customary for grantees and mortgagees to require with the deed or mortgage a *search* or *abstract of title*, which is a synopsis from

the public records, extending over a number of years and showing the source and character of the title of the grantor or mortgagor to the property. For further protection deeds and mortgages are usually *recorded*, that is, copied in full in the office of the County Clerk or Registrar of Deeds of the county where the property is situated. If not so recorded, the grantee or mortgagee is liable to lose the interest granted to him, for it is a rule of law that if there be two or more deeds or mortgages upon the same property, the one first recorded takes preference over all the others without regard to its date.

**Chattel Mortgages.**—A *chattel mortgage* is a mortgage upon personal property, given as security for the payment of an indebtedness. This does not have to be recorded, but for protection it is usual to *file*, that is, deposit a copy in the office of the Clerk of the Town where the property is.

**Other Written Contracts.**—Contracts in writing, not required to be under seal, are: (a) Contracts to sell any interest in lands ; (b) contracts for services that cannot be performed within a year ; (c) contracts for the purchase and sale of personal property exceeding in value a certain amount, usually fifty dollars ; (d) contracts to be responsible for the debt of another. The last is known as *guaranty*, and the person making such guaranty is called a *guarantor*.

**Sale.**—A contract of *sale* is one by which the ownership of personal property is transferred to another for a *money* consideration. The person making the sale is called the *vendor* ; the purchaser, the *vendee*. Among the rules governing sales are the following: (a) If the goods are



sold by sample, they must be as good as the sample; (b) if the goods are ordered for a particular purpose, known to the vendor, they must be suited to the purpose; and (c) in the sale of foods they must be wholesome.

**Bailment.**—A contract of *bailment* is one by which the possession of personal property is transferred from one person, called the *bailor*, to another, called the *bailee*, for some purpose, to be returned when the purpose is accomplished. The most important bailment is called *locatio*, and is the delivery of an article to the *bailee* for *his* use upon compensation *to* the *bailor*; or for the performance of labor upon an article *by* the *bailee* upon compensation *from* the *bailor*. The hiring of horses, the repairing of a watch by a watchmaker, the transportation of goods by railroad companies and the care of property by innkeepers are instances of *locatio*.

**Agency.**—A contract of *agency* is one by which a person appoints another to act for him in some business transaction. The person making the appointment is called the *principal*; the person appointed, the *agent*. Agents are of two kinds—*general*, who perform all the business of the principal at a particular place; and *special*, who are employed for some particular purpose. Among the rules governing agency, the most important one is that any contract or act of the agent within the line of his employment is binding upon the principal.

**Partnership.**—A contract of *partnership* is one by which two or more persons unite their labor or property or both in some business in which they agree to share the losses and divide the profits. In this relation the partners own



in common all the property, and each partner is the agent of the partnership. For the debts of the partnership, not only the common property, but the individual property of the partners is liable after the partnership property is exhausted.

**Corporations.**—A *corporation* is a body of individuals created by law under a special name, with the power of acting as a single individual. Corporations are either *public*, as a city or county, or *private*, as those organized for religious, charitable, social, manufacturing and business purposes. Their usual powers, derived from general laws or a special act, called a *charter*, are to sue and be sued ; to purchase and own lands and chattels ; to make by-laws for their government ; to remove members and elect others in their place or in place of those who may die. Besides these, exceptional privileges, such as to erect telephone poles or lay pipes, are sometimes given to a corporation. This is called a *franchise*. The capital of a manufacturing or business corporation is divided into shares of stock, and those who own the shares are called members or *stockholders*. The stockholders elect some of their number *directors* or *trustees*, to carry on the affairs of the corporation, and these, as a *board*, choose its officers. The liability of stockholders, directors and officers for the debts of a corporation are fixed by statute.

**Insurance.**—A contract of *insurance* is one by which a person or corporation, in return for certain compensation, known as *premium*, undertakes to indemnify another against loss or injury. *Fire and marine insurance* cover losses sustained by fire or the mishaps of shipping. *Life insurance* is a contract by which the insurer agrees to

pay a certain sum to the insured after the expiration of a fixed time, or to his representatives at his death. The contract of insurance is contained in an instrument called a *policy*, which also contains a description and facts relative to the insured person or property, known as the *risk*, and any misrepresentations on the part of the insured at the time of making the contract will release the insurer from liability.

**Indorsement.**—A contract of *indorsement* is one by which a person agrees that he will pay the amount of a negotiable paper to its holder when due, if the maker does not. *Indorsement* consists in the writing by a person of his name across the back of the instrument. *Negotiable paper* consists of promissory notes, bills of exchange, checks, etc., when they are payable to some person or “bearer” or “order.” A *promissory note* is a promise in writing to pay a certain sum of money at a certain time. The party signing the note is the *maker*; the person to whom it is payable, the *payee*. A *bill of exchange*, also called a *draft*, is an order in writing by one person upon another to pay a certain sum of money to a third person either upon presentation or at some time after date of presentation. The person upon whom such order is made is not liable therefor until he *accepts it*—that is, promises in writing upon its face to pay it. He is then called an *acceptor*, and becomes the principal debtor. A *check* is a written order upon a bank to pay to a person named a sum of money and charge the same to the account of the person making the check. To fix an indorser’s liability the negotiable paper must be presented for payment, at the time it becomes due, at the

place where it is payable. If payment is refused, the instrument is *protested*—that is, non-payment is certified—usually by a notary public, and notice of this fact must be given at once to the indorser.

**Liens.**—A *lien* is the right of a person to retain possession of the property of another until certain demands are satisfied. Among those entitled to this right are innkeepers and railroad companies for their services upon the property which they have cared for or carried. They may sell the property and apply the proceeds to the payment of the claims. *Mechanic's liens* are those held by contractors, mechanics and others who furnish labor and materials for buildings. They are governed by statute, and can only be enforced by legal proceedings similar to the foreclosure of a mortgage.

**Remedies for Violation of Contracts.**—If there is a violation of a contract, the injured party has a remedy by legal action by which he can compel the performance of the contract or can recover money damages for the injury he has sustained.

**Wills and Testaments.**—A last *will* and *testament* is an instrument, usually required to be in writing, by which a person disposes of his property, to take effect after his death. Only persons of full age and mental capacity can make wills of *real* property, but in some States certain minors can so dispose of their *personal* property. (A person dying without a last will and testament is said to die *intestate*.) It is necessary that the instrument be signed by the maker, called the *testator*, who in most States must acknowledge such act, with the statement that it is his last will and testament, in the presence of two or

more witnesses, who are not interested in the will, and who then sign, in the presence of each other and the testator, a statement of such execution and acknowledgment. Changes are sometimes made in wills and testaments, by instruments called *codicils*, which must be executed with the same formalities as the original instruments. A will and testament becomes effectual upon the death of the testator, unless it has been destroyed by his direction or has been expressly revoked by a subsequent will. After the death of the testator the will and testament are proved, or *probated*, before a surrogate or probate judge, and the real property passes at once to those entitled to it. The affairs of the estate are settled, and distribution of the personal property is usually made by a person named in the will, called an *executor*. When a person dies intestate his real property passes directly to his heirs, and his affairs are settled and his personal property is distributed by an officer appointed by the surrogate, called an *administrator*.

## 2. RELATIVE RIGHTS.

**Husband and Wife.**—The contract of marriage is regulated by statute in the several States, but as a rule the following persons are debarred: (a) Males under fourteen and females under twelve years of age ; (b) persons having another husband or wife living ; and (c) persons related to each other within certain degrees. The mutual promises of the parties constitute the consideration. In some States a license issued by an official is required before a marriage can be celebrated. *Divorce* is the judicial termination of a marriage contract ; the grounds upon



which it is granted are fixed by statute. In the marriage relation the husband is considered the head of the family. He can determine the place of abode and can compel the wife's return if she leaves him without cause. He is required to support and protect her, and in the buying of articles for the home the wife is considered the agent of the husband, so long as she lives with him ; but he is released from all obligations of this character if she leaves him without cause.

**Parent and Child.**—Children owe to their parents *obedience* and *service* during their minority. Parents are obliged to protect the child, provide necessary food and clothing, and educate him according to his station in life.

**Guardian and Ward.**—A *guardian* is one who has the care of the person or property of a minor, called a *ward*. A guardian of the person is entitled to obedience, but not service. A guardian of the property must support and educate the ward according to the ward's station and property. He cannot make any profit out of the property for himself, and is liable for any loss occasioned by his negligence.

**Master and Servant.**—A *master* is one who by virtue of a contract has authority over another person, called a *servant*. Servants are of two kinds—*apprentices*, or those placed under the authority of another for the purpose of learning some trade ; and *hired servants*, or those who engage to render services in return for wages. The master is entitled to obedience and service during the term of the contract. The servant is entitled to receive the agreed wages during the time of the contract, unless he leaves or is discharged for cause.

## 2. WRONGS.

### 1. TORTS.

**Torts.**—A *tort* is the intentional and wrongful doing or not doing of some act by which another is injured. The most common torts are slander, libel, fraud and assault. *Slander* is the willful injury of the reputation of another by spoken language. *Libel* is the willful injury of the reputation of another by writing, printing, engraving or other permanent form. Libel is also a crime. *Fraud* is a false representation, made with the intent to deceive, and resulting in actual injury. *Assault*, which is also a crime, will be defined later.

### 2. CRIMES.

**Definitions.**—A *crime* is an act or omission forbidden by law and punishable by death, imprisonment, fine or other penalty. A *felony* is a crime punishable by death or imprisonment in a state prison. All other crimes are *misdemeanors*. Two elements are necessary to constitute a crime—the criminal intent and the criminal act. A *principal* is one who commits the crime, or one who is present aiding and abetting the act. An *accessory* is one who, not present, yet aids and abets the commission of a felony, or one who, with knowledge of the crime, aids the offender to avoid arrest and punishment. In the commission of treason and misdemeanors all the wrongdoers are principals.

**Crimes against the State.**—The principal crimes against the State are treason, illegal voting, bribery, aiding

escape of prisoner, counterfeiting, forging, perjury and influencing another person to swear falsely, which is called subornation of perjury.

**Crimes against Persons; Suicide.**—The principal crimes against persons are suicide, homicide, assault, robbery and libel. *Suicide* is the intentional taking of one's own life. The attempt to commit suicide is also a crime.

**Homicide.**—*Homicide* is the killing of a human being by another. *Murder in the first degree* is the wrongful killing of a person either with a premeditated design to cause his death; or by a reckless act dangerous to life, although without intent to take life; or by a person engaged in the commission of a felony. The usual punishment is death or life imprisonment. *Murder in the second degree* is the intentional killing of a human being without premeditation. The usual punishment is life imprisonment. All other forms of homicide are termed *manslaughter*. Homicide is *excusable* when committed by accident. Homicide committed in the defense of self or another is *justifiable*. No person can be convicted of homicide unless it is proved that a life has been taken and that he is the one who took it.

**Assault.**—An *assault* in its highest form is either an attack upon a person with intent to kill or commit a felony, with a weapon likely to produce death; or the administration of poison or drugs dangerous to life. It is a felony. *Assault and battery* is an attack upon a person with the fists with the intention to do him bodily injury. This is a misdemeanor.

**Robbery.**—*Robbery* is the unlawful taking of personal property from a person against his will, by force or vio-

lence, or by arousing fear in such person. Secretly picking a person's pocket is not robbery.

**Crimes against Property; Arson.**—The principal crimes against property are arson, burglary and larceny. *Arson* in its highest degree consists in setting fire at night time to a building or car or other structure in which there is a human being. The punishment varies in the different States, the most severe being imprisonment for life.

**Burglary.**—*Burglary* is the forcible entering of a house or room for the purpose of committing a crime. Its highest degree occurs when such entry is made in the night, when a human being is within, by a person armed with a dangerous weapon. It is a felony.

**Larceny.**—*Larceny* is the taking, concealing or withholding of personal property with the intent to deprive the owner of its possession. The highest degree, called *grand larceny*, consists in taking property from the person of another in the night time, or in the taking at any time of property above a certain value. All other stealing is *petit larceny*.

**Bigamy.**—The principal crime against public morals is bigamy. It is *bigamy* when a person, having a living husband or wife, marries another.

**Arrest.**—*Arrest* is the apprehension of an offender in order that he may be punished for his crime. It is usually made by an officer upon a *warrant*, which is a mandate of a court commanding the arrest of the offender. But an arrest may be made without a warrant when the offender is detected in the actual commission of a crime.



## MUNICIPAL LAW.

MUNICIPAL LAW	{	UNWRITTEN	{	Common Law.	
				Equity.	
	{	WRITTEN	{	Federal	{ Constitution.
					{ Acts of Congress (Federal Statutes).
					{ Treaties.
			{	State	{ Constitutions.
					{ Acts of Legislatures (State Statutes).

## CIVIL RIGHTS.

## I. ABSOLUTE RIGHTS:

1. *Personal Security* { Life.  
Reputation.

2. *Personal Liberty.*

3. *Private Property.*

Real Property { Rights of { Ways.  
Franchises.  
Rents.

Personal Property.

Estates—

*In Real Property.*

{	As to Tenure	{	Real Estates	{	in Fee.	{	Life Estate
					for Life		Dower.
{	As to Title	{	Personal Estates (Lease)	{	Landlord and Tenant.	{	
			by Descent.				
			by Purchase	{	by {	Public—Patent.	
					Grant {	Private—Deed, Mortgage.	
					by Devise—Will.		

*In Personal Property.*

{	As to tenure	{	Absolute.	
			Qualified.	
{	As to Title	{	By operation of law.	
			By sole act of owner.	
			By joint act of parties	{ Gift. Will and testament. Contract.

ABSOLUTE RIGHTS—Continued.

Contracts—

Conditions as to.

{	Parties	{	Of full age.
		{	Of full understanding.
		{	Free to contract.
Consideration.			
{	Subject	{	Moral.
		{	Lawful.
Meeting of the minds.			

Classes.

{	Oral.								
{	Written	{	Under seal	{	Deed {	{	Signed, Sealed, Acknowledged, Delivered and Recorded.		
								Quitclaim Etc., etc.	
			Mortgage						
		{	Not under seal	{	For purchase {	{	Lands. Personal property over \$50.		
								and sale of	
					Which cannot be performed in a year.				
					Guaranty.				
					Chattel mortgage.				
{	Sale	{	Implied warranty	{	From sample.	{			
					When particularly manufactured.				
					As to food.				
	Bailment.								
{	Agency	{	General	{	Principal and agent.				
			Special						
{	Partnership					{	Public.	{	Charter. Franchise. Directors. Stockholders.
				Corporation	Private				
{	Insurance	{	Fire	{	Policy and premium.				
			Marine						
			Life, etc.						
{	Indorsement	{	Negotiable	{	Promissory note (maker, payee).	{	At sight	{	(Accceptor).
			paper		(draft)				

Remedies.

{	Enforce performance.
{	Recover damages.

Wills and Testaments.

{	Execution.	Testator and Intestate.
{	Addition (codicil).	Executors and Administrators.
{	Probate.	

**II. RELATIVE RIGHTS:***1. Husband and Wife.*

{	Marriage	{	Rights and duties	{	Residence.
					Return.
{	Divorce.				Protection.
					Support.

*2. Parent and Child.*

Duties of	{	Child	{	Obedience.
			{	Service.
	{	Parent	{	Protection.
			{	Support.
			{	Education.

*3. Guardian and Ward.*

Guardian	{	Of person,	Entitled to obedience.	
		Of property	{	Must support
			{	Must educate

*4. Master and Servant.*

{	Apprentice.
{	Hired Servant.

**WRONGS.****I. TORTS:****Classes.**

{	Slander.
	Libel.
	Fraud.
	Assault.

**II. CRIMES:****Divisions.**

{	Felonies.
{	Misdemeanors.

**Criminals.**

{	Principal.
{	Accessory.

**Against State.**

{	Treason.
	Illegal voting.
	Bribery.
	Aiding a prisoner to escape.
	Counterfeiting.
	Forging public records.
	Perjury.

CRIMES—*Continued.***Against Persons.**

{	Suicide.			
	Homicide	{	Murder	{ 1st degree
			Manslaughter	{ 2d degree { Excusable and
				{ Justifiable Homicide.
{	Assault	{	With intent	{ To kill.
			and battery.	{ To commit a felony.
{	Robbery.			

**Against Property.**

{	Arson.		
	Burglary.		
{	Larceny	{	Grand.
			Petit.

**Against Public Decency and Morals (Bigamy).****III. ARREST:**

With a warrant.

Without a warrant.





# APPENDIX I

## THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

*In Congress, July 4, 1776*

### THE UNANIMOUS DECLARATION OF THE THIRTEEN UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the Powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security.—Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries

and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature, a right inestimable to them and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of and superior to the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation :

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us :

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States :

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world :

For imposing taxes on us without our consent :

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury :

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offenses :

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies :

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering fundamentally the forms of our government :

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms : our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injuries. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them by the ties of our common kindred to disavow these



usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They too have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and holds them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

*New Hampshire*—Josiah Bartlett, Wm. Whipple, Matthew Thornton.

*Massachusetts Bay*—Saml. Adams, John Adams, Robt. Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.

*Rhode Island*—Step. Hopkins, William Ellery.

*Connecticut*—Roger Sherman, Sam'el Huntington, Wm. Williams, Oliver Wolcott.

*New York*—Wm. Floyd, Phil. Livingston, Frans. Lewis, Lewis Morris.

*New Jersey*—Richd. Stockton, Jno. Witherspoon, Fras. Hopkinson, John Hart, Abra. Clark.

*Pennsylvania*—Robt. Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benja. Franklin, John Morton, Geo. Clymer, Jas. Smith, Geo. Taylor, James Wilson, Geo. Ross.

*Delaware*—Cæsar Rodney, Geo. Read, Tho. M'Kean.

*Maryland*—Samuel Chase, Wm. Paca, Thos. Stone, Charles Carroll of Carrollton.

*Virginia*—George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Th. Jefferson, Benja. Harrison, Thos. Nelson, Jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.

*North Carolina*—Wm. Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.

*South Carolina*—Edward Rutledge, Thos. Heyward, Junr., Thomas Lynch, Junr., Arthur Middleton.

*Georgia*—Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, Geo. Walton.

## APPENDIX II

### DELEGATES TO THE CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION

Those with numbers before their names signed the Constitution, while those whose names are in italics were appointed delegates, but did not attend the Convention.

#### NEW HAMPSHIRE.

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. John Langdon.       | 2. Nicholas Gilman.   |
| <i>John Pickering.</i> | <i>Benjamin West.</i> |

#### MASSACHUSETTS.

- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Francis Dana.</i> | 3. Nathaniel Gorham. |
| Elbridge Gerry.      | 4. Rufus King.       |
| Caleb Strong.        |                      |

#### RHODE ISLAND (no appointment). .

#### CONNECTICUT.

- |                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| 5. William S. Johnson. | 6. Roger Sherman. |
| Oliver Ellsworth.      |                   |

#### NEW YORK.

- |               |                        |
|---------------|------------------------|
| Robert Yates. | 7. Alexander Hamilton. |
| John Lansing. |                        |

#### NEW JERSEY.

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 8. William Livingston. | 10. William Patterson. |
| 9. David Brearly.      | <i>John Neilson.</i>   |
| William C. Houston.    | <i>Abraham Clarke.</i> |
| 11. Jonathan Dayton.   |                        |

#### PENNSYLVANIA.

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 12. Benjamin Franklin. | 16. Thomas Fitzsimons. |
| 13. Thomas Mifflin.    | 17. Jared Ingersoll.   |
| 14. Robert Morris.     | 18. James Wilson.      |
| 15. George Clymer.     | 19. Gouverneur Morris. |

DELAWARE.

- |                          |                      |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 20. George Read.         | 22. John Dickinson.  |
| 21. Gunning Bedford, Jr. | 23. Richard Bassett. |
| 24. Jacob Broom.         |                      |

MARYLAND.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 25. James McHenry.                   | 27. Daniel Carroll.                    |
| 26. Daniel of St. Thomas<br>Jenifer. | John Francis Mercer.<br>Luther Martin. |

VIRGINIA.

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 28. George Washington.           | George Mason.                               |
| <i>Patrick Henry</i> (declined). | George Wythe.                               |
| Edmund Randolph.                 | James McClurg (in the<br>room of P. Henry). |
| 29. John Blair.                  |   |
| 30. James Madison, Jr.           |   |

NORTH CAROLINA.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>Richard Caswell</i> (resigned).                 | <i>Willie Jones</i> (declined).                      |
| Alexander Martin.                                  | 32. Richard D. Spaight.                              |
| William R. Davie.                                  | 33. Hugh Williamson (in<br>the room of W.<br>Jones). |
| 31. William Blount (in the<br>room of R. Caswell). |  |

SOUTH CAROLINA.

- |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 34. John Rutledge.       | 36. Charles Pinckney. |
| 35. Charles C. Pinckney. | 37. Pierce Butler.    |

GEORGIA.

- |                      |                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 38. William Few.     | <i>George Walton.</i>       |
| 39. Abraham Baldwin. | William Houston.            |
| William Pierce.      | <i>Nathaniel Pendleton.</i> |

## APPENDIX III

### CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

#### PREAMBLE.

We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

#### ARTICLE I. LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

##### SECTION 1. CONGRESS IN GENERAL.

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

##### SECTION 2. HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES.

1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

2. No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and



within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5. The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

### SECTION 3. SENATE.

1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

3. No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

4. The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a President pro tempore, in the absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation.

When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present.

7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law.

#### SECTION 4. BOTH HOUSES.

1. The times, places and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing Senators.

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

#### SECTION 5. THE HOUSES SEPARATELY.

1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each house may provide.

2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

#### SECTION 6. PRIVILEGES AND DISABILITIES OF MEMBERS.

1. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury

of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2. No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time, and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

#### SECTION 7. MODE OF PASSING LAWS.

1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.



SECTION 8. POWERS GRANTED TO CONGRESS.

The Congress shall have power:

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;
2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;
3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;
4. To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;
5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;
6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;
7. To establish post offices and post roads;
8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;
9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;
10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;
11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;
12. To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;
13. To provide and maintain a navy;
14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;
15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrection and repel invasions;
16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;
17. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over



all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings; and

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

#### SECTION 9. POWERS DENIED TO THE UNITED STATES.

1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

3. No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.

4. No capitation, or other direct, tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

6. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

7. No money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

8. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign State.

#### SECTION 10. POWERS DENIED TO THE STATES.

1. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts;

pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

3. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II. EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

### SECTION 1. PRESIDENT AND VICE PRESIDENT.

1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

3. (The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Rep-

representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said House shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice President. [*Superseded by Amendment XII.*])

4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States, at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

6. In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation or inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

7. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:

“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

## SECTION 2. POWERS OF THE PRESIDENT.

1. The President shall be Commander in Chief of the army and navy



of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3. The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

#### SECTION 3. DUTIES OF THE PRESIDENT.

He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

#### SECTION 4. IMPEACHMENT.

The President, Vice President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III. JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

#### SECTION 1. UNITED STATES COURTS.

The judicial power of the United States, shall be vested in one



Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services, a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

## SECTION 2. JURISDICTION OF THE UNITED STATES COURTS.

1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States, between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens or subjects.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crime shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

## SECTION 3. TREASON.

1. Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV. THE STATES AND THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT.

### SECTION 1. STATE RECORDS.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

### SECTION 2. PRIVILEGES OF CITIZENS, ETC.

1. The citizen of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

2. A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

3. No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

### SECTION 3. NEW STATES AND TERRITORIES.

1. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

### SECTION 4. GUARANTEE TO THE STATES.

The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

## ARTICLE V.    POWER OF AMENDMENT.

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress ; provided that no amendments which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article ; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.    PUBLIC DEBT, SUPREMACY OF THE  
CONSTITUTION, OATH OF OFFICE, RELIGIOUS TEST.

1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

2. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof ; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land ; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation, to support this Constitution ; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

## ARTICLE VII.    RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

The ratification of the convention of nine States, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

## AMENDMENTS.

## ARTICLE I.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

## ARTICLE II.

A well-regulated militia, being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

## ARTICLE III.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

## ARTICLE IV.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the person or things to be seized.

## ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

## ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall



have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

#### ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury, shall be otherwise reëxamined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

#### ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

#### ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

#### ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

#### ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

#### ARTICLE XII.

1. The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of

the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate; the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

2. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

3. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

### ARTICLE XIII.

1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

2. Congress shall have authority to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

### ARTICLE XIV.

1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty,

or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

## ARTICLE XV.

1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

## ARTICLE XVI.

The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes on incomes, from whatever source derived, without apportionment among the several States, and without regard to any census or enumeration.

## ARTICLE XVII.

The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, elected by the people thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote. The electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislatures.

When vacancies happen in the representation of any State in the Senate, the executive authority of such State shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies: *Provided*, That the legislature of any State may empower the executive thereof to make temporary appointments until the people fill the vacancies by election as the legislature may direct.

This amendment shall not be so construed as to affect the election or term of any Senator chosen before it becomes valid as part of the Constitution.



# INDEX

	PAGE		PAGE.
Acceptor .....	211	Bill of Rights,	
Accessory to a crime .....	215	American .....	183
Actions, Civil .....	163	English .....	23
Acts of Trade .....	25	Bills, .....	77
Adjournment. <i>See</i> Congress.....		for raising revenue .....	116
Admiralty Law .....	162	passed over "President's veto" .....	119
Administrators.....	213	of Attainder.....	109
Admission of new States.....	178	of Credit.....	112
Agency .....	209	of Exchange:.....	211
Aliens .....	192	Blockade.....	197
Ambassadors .....	137	Bond and Mortgage .....	207
Amendment XII.....	123	Borrowing power of Congress.....	88
Amendment XIII .....	187	Bribery.....	158
Amendment XIV .....	61	Burglary .....	217
Amendment XV .....	188		
Amendments .....	182, 183	Cabinet, appointment of.....	134
Amnesty .....	132	defined .....	7
Annapolis Convention.....	40	in England and United States .....	135
Annual Message .....	148	meetings of .....	135
Appointments .....	129	origin of.....	134
Apportionment .....	60	Call of the House.....	74
Appropriations.....	109	Capture at Sea.....	196
Arbitration, International .....	193	Cartels .....	195
Aristocracy .....	10, 12	Caveat .....	93
Armistice .....	133, 196	Census.....	62, 66, 147
Army .....	102	Cession .....	191
salaries and terms of officers of .....	169	Chargés d'Affaires .....	138
Arrest .....	217	Charter Governments.....	43
Arson.....	217	Charter of Liberties .....	20
Articles of Confederation, adopted. ....	32	Plymouth and London Com-	
attempts to amend.....	39	panies .....	22
government under .....	39	Charters of Corporations.....	210
outline of .....	35	Chattel Mortgages.....	208
Articles of Impeachment .....	156	Chattels.....	203
Assaults .....	215, 216	Checks .....	211
Attainder, Bills of .....	109	Circuit Courts,	
Attorney-General .....	145	circuits and judges of .....	160
Autocracy .....	10	original jurisdiction of .....	165
		Circuit Courts of Appeal,	
Bail.....	186	composition of .....	160
Bailment .....	209	jurisdiction of .....	160
Bank .....	142	Citizens .....	13
Bankrupt .....	100	effect of war on .....	190
Bankruptcy .....	100	rights of .....	98, 170
Law defined .....	100	Citizenship, determination of.....	97
National, Laws.....	99	National.....	96
proceedings in .....	100	of resident of a Territory.....	177
State, Laws.....	101	Civil Action .....	163
Belligerency, Recognition of .....	196	Civil Officers defined.....	157
Belligerents.....	194	Civil Rights .....	202
Communications between.....	195	Civil Service Act .....	130
Obligations of neutrals and, to		Civil Service Reform.....	130
each other .....	196	Civil War defined.....	194
Bigamy .....	217	Classified Civil Service.....	130, 142
Bill, Joint.....	79	Clearance of Vessels.....	86
of Pains and Penalties.....	110	Coast Survey .....	147
		Codicils.....	213

	PAGE
Coinage, State not to engage in....	112
under direction of Treasury Department.....	141
Collateral Security.....	207
Collectors of Customs.....	84
Collection of Revenues.....	84, 141
Colonial Governments.....	42
Colonies, Classification of.....	42
Commerce.....	85
Commerce, Colonial,.....	25
demoralized state of.....	40
Commerce, Interstate.....	87
Commercial Agents.....	140
Commissions, International.....	193
Commissioner of Labor.....	147
Committee of States.....	35
Committee of the Whole.....	78
Committees in Congress.....	75, 77
Committees of Correspondence.....	28
Common Law defined.....	162
Commons, House of, first.....	21
permanently established.....	22
Commonwealth.....	13
Commutation of Sentence.....	132
Concurrent Resolution.....	79
Confederacies defined.....	9
monarchical.....	15
republican.....	16
Confederacy, Executive of the.....	120
Confederation, Articles of. <i>See</i> Articles of Confederation.	
Conference Committees.....	80
Confiscation.....	7
Congress.....	56
adjournments of, limited.....	71
committees of.....	75
constitutionality of acts of..	80
detention of members of.....	70
executive departments created by.....	134
general powers of.....	105
Houses of, contrasted.....	64
implied powers of.....	105
interaction of Houses of.....	79
journals of.....	79
legislative powers of.....	80
Librarian of.....	147
limitations on powers of.....	80
organization and method of work of.....	71
place of meeting of.....	63
power of, over acquired territory.....	176
power of, over jurisdiction of courts.....	165
power of President to convene.	134
power of, to admit new States.	178
prohibitions on legislation of..	107
relations of President to.....	117
representation in.....	58, 62
sessions of.....	62
territorial delegates in.....	68
<i>See also</i> Continental Congress; House of Representatives; Representatives; Senate; Senators.	
Congress of the Confederacy.....	35

	PAGE
Congress, Stamp Act.....	26
Congressional Districts.....	64, 65
Congressional Record.....	79
Connecticut Compromise.....	57
Conscription.....	6
Consideration.....	206
Constitution defined.....	7, 8
Constitution, Federal, difference between Confederation and.....	54
method of amending.....	182
objections to.....	50
origin of.....	52
preamble to.....	52
ratification of.....	182
ratified.....	51
Constitutional Convention called...	40
prominent delegates to.....	46
statesmen absent from.....	48
Constitutionality.....	80
Consular Agents.....	140
Consular Service.....	139
grades of.....	139
Consuls.....	140
Consuls-General.....	140
Continental Congress, First.....	29
Continental Congress, Second.....	30
Contraband of War.....	197
Contracts.....	113, 205
conditions necessary for.....	205
obligation of, not to be impaired by States.....	113
of agency.....	209
of indorsement.....	211
of insurance.....	210
of marriage.....	213
of partnership.....	209
of sale.....	208
oral.....	206
under seal.....	206
violations of.....	212
written.....	206
Convention (treaty).....	132
Copyrights.....	93
infringement of.....	94
issued by Librarian of Congress.....	147
method of securing.....	94
Corporations.....	210
Council of State.....	7
Counterfeiting.....	90
Court of Claims.....	161
jurisdiction of.....	166
Court of Impeachment. <i>See</i> Impeachment.	
Court Officers.....	161
Courts. <i>See</i> Supreme Court; Inferior Courts; District Courts; Circuits Courts; Circuit Courts of Appeal; Court of Claims.	
Crime.....	215
a capital, defined.....	185
an infamous, defined.....	185
Crimes, against persons.....	216
against property.....	217
against the state.....	215
Criminal Action.....	163
trial by jury in.....	165

	PAGE		PAGE
Crown Colonies.....	42	Executive Departments created by	
Custom Houses.....	84	Congress.....	134
Customs, <i>See</i> Duties.		official heads of.....	136
		when created.....	135
		<i>See also under their respective</i>	
		<i>names.</i>	
Debate, Freedom of.....	71	Executive Function.....	7
Declaration of Independence.....	31	Executive Sessions.....	131
Declaratory Act.....	27	Executors.....	213
Deeds.....	206	Exequaturs.....	139
recording.....	206, 208	Expatriation.....	192
Delegates to Congress.....	68	Ex Post Facto Laws.....	110
Democracy defined.....	13	prohibited.....	109
pure.....	13	Extradition.....	173, 192
representative.....	13		
Department of Agriculture.....	146		
of Justice.....	145	Federal, Meaning of.....	49
of State.....	136	Federal Governments.....	9
of the Interior.....	146	Federal Principle.....	17
Despotism.....	10	Federal Territory.....	104, 174
Diplomacy.....	137	Federalist, The.....	51
Diplomatic Agents.....	137	Felonies.....	215
Diplomatic Commissioners.....	138	Filibustering.....	78
Diplomatic Privileges.....	138	Foreclosure of a Mortgage.....	207
Diplomatic Relations, severance of.....	139	Franchise.....	203, 210
Diplomatic Service.....	137	Frank and franking privilege.....	92
Direct Taxes levied.....	85	Franklin, Benjamin.....	47
Directors of Corporations.....	210	Fraud.....	215
District Attorneys.....	161	Free Coinage.....	144
District Courts.....	160	Freedmen.....	188
original jurisdiction of.....	165	Freedom of Religion and Press....	183
District of Columbia.....	178	Free Trade.....	84
Divorce.....	213	Fugitive Slaves.....	173
Domiciled Alien.....	192	Fugitives from Justice.....	173, 192
Drafts.....	211		
Duties, collection of.....	84		
export, prohibited.....	88	Gerrymandering.....	66
specific and ad valorem.....	83	Government.....	5, 6
States not to levy certain....	114	branches of.....	7
tonnage.....	114	in a republic.....	14
		ministry termed.....	7
		of a State. <i>See</i> State Gov-	
		ernments.	
Election, of President and Vice-		of a Territory.....	176
President.....	121, 128	of District of Columbia.....	178
of Presidential electors.....	124	plans of, discussed in Consti-	
of Senators and Representa-		tutional Convention.....	48
tives.....	64	powers of.....	6
Elections, Review of.....	68	revolutionary, defined.....	32
Electoral College. <i>See</i> Presi-		system of, under Confederation	
dential Electors.			35, 39
Electoral Votes, Counting of.....	125	Governments.....	9
Embargoes.....	194	aristocratic.....	12
Eminent Domain, Right of.....	187	confederated.....	9
Entry of Vessels.....	86	democratic.....	13
Equity.....	162	hierarchical.....	12
Estate.....	203	monarchical.....	10
for life.....	203	patriarchal.....	10
for years.....	204	single.....	9
in dower.....	204	theocratic.....	10
in fee.....	203	Governments of the Colonies.....	42
Estates in personal property.....	204	Grand Jury.....	185
in real property.....	203	Grand Larceny.....	217
Eviction.....	204	Grantee.....	206
Excises.....	83, 85	Grantor.....	206
Executive.....	120	Greenbacks.....	144
fear of, in State governments..	44	Guarantor.....	208
number of.....	121	Guaranty.....	208
reason for a separate.....	120		
under the Confederation.....	120		



	PAGE		PAGE
Guardians .....	214	Judiciary, necessity of a National. ....	154
Habeas Corpus .....	22	of the Confederacy.....	154
not to be suspended.....	108	Jurisdiction .....	162
Habeas Corpus Act.....	22	appellate.....	162
Hamilton, Alexander.....	47	concurrent .....	162
Hierarchies .....	12	limitations of, as to parties... ..	163
High Crimes.....	158	limitations of, as to penalties. ....	164
High Seas.....	95, 191	limitations of, as to subject.. ..	163
Hostilities, Conduct of.....	195	of Circuit Courts.....	165
Homicide .....	216	of Circuit Courts of Appeal... ..	166
House of Commons. <i>See</i> Commons,		of Court of Claims.....	166
House of.		of District Courts.....	165
House of Representatives.....	56	of Supreme Court.....	164
change in.....	63	original.....	162
Committee of the Whole in... ..	78	Jurisprudence, Origin of American. ....	162
committees of.....	75	Jury Trial, in civil suit .....	187
drawing seats in.....	75	in criminal action.....	165, 186
formalities of organization of.. ..	74	Landlord .....	204
increase in membership of.....	62	Larceny .....	217
officers of.....	72	Law .....	4, 5
rules of .....	77	admiralty.....	162
special powers of.....	116	common .....	162
similarity of, to House of Com-		military .....	103
mons.....	72	municipal.....	202
Husband and Wife.....	213	Salic .....	11
Impeachment .....	156	statute .....	162
conviction under an.....	158	supreme, of the land .....	181
grounds of .....	158	unwritten.....	162, 202
House's sole power of.....	117	written .....	162, 202
origin of.....	157	Laws of Nations.....	95, 190
power of .....	155	Laws, making, interpreting and en-	
procedure on.....	157	forcing .....	7
Senate's sole power to try cases		Lease .....	204
of.....	117	Legal Tender .....	143
Implied Powers of Congress.....	105	States not to make anything,	
Imposts. <i>See</i> Duties.		but gold and silver.....	112
Inauguration of President.....	125	Legislation, method of.....	77
Indictment .....	185	Lee, Richard Henry, Resolution by. ....	30
Indorsement .....	211	Legislative Function defined.....	7
Inferior Courts .....	159	Legislative Powers. <i>See</i> Congress.	
jurisdiction of .....	165	Legislature, National. <i>See</i> Con-	
Insolvent.....	100	gress.	
Inspectors of Customs.....	84	Lessee.....	204
Insurance.....	210	Lessor.....	204
policy of .....	211	Letters of Marque and Reprisal... ..	196
Internal Revenue.....	85	not to be granted by States... ..	112
International Arbitration .....	193	Letters Patent.....	93
International Commissions.....	193	Libel .....	202, 215
International Law .....	190	Liberty, Personal .....	203
Interstate Commerce.....	87	Librarian of Congress.....	147
Interstate Commerce Commission..	147	Liens .....	212
Intervention .....	191	mechanics'.....	212
Intestate.....	212	Life-saving Service .....	142
Joint Bill .....	79	Lighthouse Service .....	147
Joint Resolution .....	79	Locatio .....	209
Joint High Commissions.....	193	Long Session .....	63
Journals of Congress.....	79	Loose Constructionists.....	81
Judgments of one State in another. ....	172	Mace .....	73
Judicial Function defined.....	7	Madison, James.....	46
Judiciary .....	154	Magna Charta .....	20
divisions of .....	156	Mails, use of, limited .....	92
establishment of.....	155	Manslaughter .....	216
independence of .....	155	Marriage.....	213
limitations on .....	163	Master and Servant.....	214
		Mechanic's Liens.....	212



	PAGE		PAGE
Messages of President.....	148	Pardons.....	132
Military Law.....	103	examined by Attorney General..	145
Military Powers of Congress.....	101	Parent and Child.....	214
of President.....	129	Parliament in 18th Century.....	56
Militia.....	103	Partnership.....	209
Ministers Plenipotentiary.....	137	Passports.....	136
Resident.....	138	Patent (for land).....	204
Ministry defined.....	7	Patent, Letters.....	93
Mints.....	90	Patents.....	93
Misdemeanors.....	158, 215	infringement of.....	94
Mixed Commissions.....	193	issuance of.....	146
Monarchies.....	10	Peace made by Treaty.....	133
absolute.....	10	Peers.....	21
constitutional.....	11	Pensions.....	146
division of, as to powers.....	10	People, Powers reserved to.....	187
division of, as to succession.....	11	Person.....	163
elective.....	11	Persona Grata.....	139
hereditary.....	11	Persona non Grata.....	138
limited.....	11	Personal Liberty.....	203
Monetary System.....	89	Personal Property.....	203
Monroe Doctrine.....	191	Personal Security.....	202
Morris, Gouverneur.....	48	Petit Jury.....	186
Mortgagee.....	207	Petit Larceny.....	217
Mortgages.....	207	Piracy.....	95
chattel.....	208	Pocket Veto.....	119
foreclosure of.....	207	Policy of Insurance.....	211
recording.....	208	Polygamy.....	184
Mortgagor.....	207	Ports of Entry.....	84
Municipal Law.....	202	Postal Service.....	91
Murder.....	216	Postal Treaties.....	146
Nation defined.....	4	Postmaster-General.....	146
National Banks.....	142	Post Office Department.....	145
government supervision of....	143	Post-offices.....	92
liabilities of stockholders of...	143	Post-roads.....	92
organization of.....	142	Powers of Congress.....	80
National Bank Notes.....	144	of President.....	129
issuance of.....	142	of Senate and House respec-	
National Credit.....	181	tively.....	115
National Income.....	85	reserved by Constitution....	187
National Protection of States.....	170	Preamble.....	52
Naturalization.....	97, 192	Preferred Ports.....	109
Navy.....	102	Presentment.....	186
Navy Department.....	145	Presents to Officials Prohibited....	111
Negotiable Paper.....	211	Presidency, Succession to.....	128
Neutral Trade.....	197	President.....	120
Neutrality.....	196	and legislation.....	117
Neutrals.....	194	annual and other messages of..	148
obligations of, and belligerents		appointing power of.....	129
to each other.....	196	civil powers of.....	129
New Jersey Plan.....	49	compensation of.....	127
Congress in the.....	57	duties of.....	148
Nobility.....	10	establishment of office of.....	121
titles of, prohibited.....	111	impeachment of.....	158
Norman Conquest, Effect of.....	19	inauguration of.....	125
Northwest Territory.....	34	military power of.....	129
delays ratification of Articles..	33	modes of election of.....	121
influence of, on Union.....	40	pardoning power of.....	132
New York cedes claims to....	34	peace and armistice made by..	133
Virginia cedes claims to.....	34	power of, to conduct foreign	
Oath.....	69	relations.....	132
Iron Clad.....	69	power of, to convene Congress..	134
of Federal and State officers..		qualifications of.....	126
	69, 75, 182	removals by.....	131
Otis, James, on Writs of Assistance.	26	sole responsibility of.....	149
		term of office of.....	125
		veto power of.....	118
		<i>See also Executive.</i>	

	PAGE
President <i>pro tempore</i> of Senate...	72
Presidential Electors,	
election of .....	124
meetings of .....	124
Principal and Agent .....	209
Principal to a Crime .....	215
Privateers .....	196
Prize .....	196
Prize Courts .....	196
Probate of Wills .....	213
Prohibitions, on Federal Govern-	
ment .....	108
on Federal and State Govern-	
ments .....	107, 109
on State Governments .....	112
Promissory Notes .....	211
Property .....	203
personal .....	203
protection to .....	186
real .....	203
Proprietary Governments .....	42
Protection .....	84
Protest of negotiable paper .....	212
Provincial Governments .....	42
Public Lands. <i>See</i> Northwest Ter-	
ritory.	
Punishment .....	6
Qualifications of President .....	126
of Representatives .....	58
of Senators .....	58
of voters for Representatives ..	67
Quartering of Troops .....	26, 184
Quorum .....	73, 74
Ratifications of a Treaty .....	133
Ratio of Representation .....	61
Real Property .....	203
Reciprocity .....	84
Registered Vessels .....	86
Rent .....	203, 204
Representation, in Congress .....	58
in "free" and "slave" States ..	60
Representatives .....	64
apportionment of .....	60
compensation of .....	69
election of .....	66
House of. <i>See</i> House of Rep-	
resentatives.	
not to hold other office .....	59
oath of .....	69
qualifications of .....	58
residence of .....	67
salaries and terms of office of.	169
vacancies in office of .....	68
<i>See also</i> Congress.	
Reprieve .....	132
Reprisals .....	194
Republic .....	13
government in a .....	14
Resolution of Independenee .....	30
Retaliation .....	84
Revenue Cutters .....	141
Revolution, American, cause of...	25
conditions at close of .....	39
Revolutionary Government .....	32
Right, of life .....	202

	PAGE
Right, of reputation .....	202
of way .....	203
Rights .....	4
absolute .....	202
Bill of. <i>See</i> Bill of Rights.	
civil .....	202
of an accused person .....	185
of colonists in America .....	22
relative .....	213
secured by Magna Charta .....	20
Risk in Insurance .....	211
Robbery .....	216
Royal Colonies .....	42
Rules of Senate and House .....	77
Rules, International, in time of	
peace .....	190
in time of war .....	194
Salaries .....	169
Sales .....	208
Salic Law .....	11
Search .....	207
Search Warrants .....	184
Secret Service .....	141
Secretary of State .....	136
Secretary of Treasury .....	142
Securities of the United States ..	91
Seignorage .....	144
Senate .....	56
confirmation of appointments	
by .....	129
committees of .....	75
executive sessions of .....	131
officers of .....	72
president of, the Vice-Presi-	
dent .....	71
rules of .....	77
similarity of, to House of Lords.	72
stability of .....	64
<i>See also</i> Congress.	
Senatorial courtesy .....	79
Senators .....	64
compensation of .....	69
election of .....	65
not to hold other office .....	59
oath of .....	69
qualifications of .....	58
terms of .....	58
vacancies in office of .....	65
Sergeant-at-Arms .....	73
Servants .....	214
Sessions of Congress .....	62
Shipping Regulations .....	86
Short Session .....	63
Slander .....	202, 215
Slave Trade not to be prohibited	
before 1808 .....	108
Slavery .....	108
abolished by Amendment	
XIII .....	187
Stockholders .....	210
Society .....	3
Sovereignty .....	4, 5
recognition of .....	190
Speaker of House .....	72
compensation of .....	70
election of .....	74

	PAGE		PAGE
Speaker of House, influence of, on legislation.....	76	Title, by last will and testament ..	205
Spoils System.....	130	by operation of law.....	205
Stamp Act .....	26, 27	by sole act of the owner.....	205
Stamp Act Congress.....	26	Titles of Nobility Prohibited.....	111
State defined.....	3	Tonnage Duty.....	114
State Bonds.....	113	States not to levy.....	114
State Comity.....	172	Torts.....	215
State Governments.....	171	Townshend Acts.....	27, 28
change of colonial to.....	43	Treason .....	158
character of .....	43	Treasury Department .....	141
modeled on English system... ..	44	Treasury Notes .....	144
State Rights.....	171	Treaties .....	132
States, admission of new.....	178	effect of war on.....	194
national protection of.....	171	making of.....	133
powers reserved to.....	187	of peace .....	196
prohibited from making		subjects of .....	193
treaties, etc.....	112	Truces.....	195, 196
republican form of govern-		Trustees of Corporations.....	210
ment.....	170, 171		
restrictions on and require-		Ultimatum.....	194
ments of, under Articles....	37	Uniform Taxes defined.....	83
Statute Law.....	162	Union. <i>See</i> Governments, Con-	
Strict Constructionists. ....	81	federated.	
Subjects .....	10	United States Commissioners.....	161
Suffrage.....	97	United States Marshals.....	161
Suicide .....	216	United States Notes.....	144
Supreme Court.....	159		
appeals <i>directly</i> to .....	166	Vacancy, in Office of President....	128
jurisdiction of.....	164	Representative.....	68
Supreme Law of the Land.....	181	Senator.....	65
		Vendee .....	208
Tariff .....	83	Vendor .....	208
<i>See also</i> Duties.		Veto.....	14
Taxation .....	81	President's power of.....	118
federal and state.....	87	use of, in England.....	119
restrictions of powers of.....	87	Vice-President.....	120
Taxes.....	81	duties of .....	127
direct .....	82, 109	election of .....	122, 128
indirect.....	82	president of Senate .....	71
limited by Magna Charta.....	20	Virginia Plan.....	49, 50
Tenant .....	204	Congress in the.....	57
Territorial Citizenship .....	177	Visit and Search.....	198
Territorial Governments .....	176	Voters, Qualifications of.....	67
Territorial Judiciary.....	177		
Territorial Legislature .....	177	War.....	194
Territorial Officers .....	176	contraband of .....	197
Territorial Rights .....	191	effect of, on citizens .....	195
Territorial Waters.....	191	effect of, on treaties.....	194
Territories, Delegates to Congress		War Department .....	144
from.....	68	War of Independence. <i>See</i> Revo-	
Territory.....	191	lution, American.	
acquisition of.....	174	Ward.....	214
Congressional power over an-		Warrant of Arrest.....	217
nexed.....	176	Washington, George.....	46
Federal.....	104, 174	Weather Bureau .....	146
Testaments .....	212	Weights and Measures.....	89, 90
Testator .....	212	Will, Title by.....	205
Theocracy .....	10	Wills .....	212
Title.....	204	codicils to .....	213
abstract of.....	207	executors of .....	213
by act of the parties.....	204	probate of.....	213
by descent.....	204	Wilson, James .....	48
by devise.....	204	Writ.....	22
by gift .....	205	Writs of Assistance.....	25
by grant .....	204	Wrongs.....	215











STATE CAPITOL

By R. LANSING and G. M. JONES

# THE GOVERNMENT OF IOWA

DAN ELBERT CLARK, PH.D.



SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY  
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO



COPYRIGHT, 1915, BY  
SILVER, BURDETT & COMPANY.

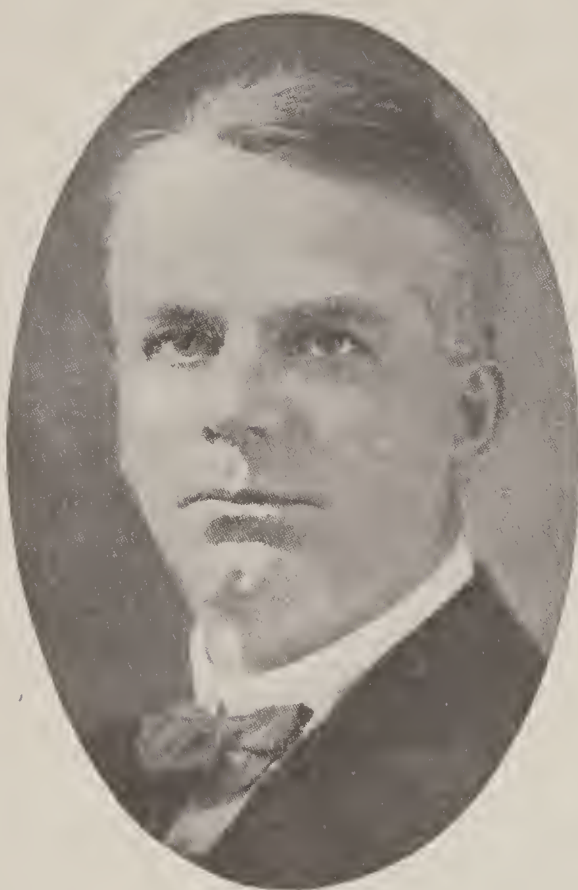
✓  
© CLA 391766

no 1

new fig 13-

C O N T E N T S

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. HISTORICAL SKETCH . . . . .	7
II. SCHOOLS . . . . .	19
III. TOWNSHIPS . . . . .	25
IV. CITIES AND TOWNS . . . . .	31
V. COUNTIES . . . . .	36
VI. THE STATE—THE LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT . . . . .	45
VII. THE STATE—THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT . . . . .	53
VIII. THE STATE—THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT . . . . .	64
IX. ELECTIONS . . . . .	71
X. TAXATION . . . . .	80
XI. ROADS . . . . .	84
XII. THE STATE EDUCATIONAL SYSTEM . . . . .	87
XIII. THE MILITARY FORCE OF THE STATE . . . . .	97
APPENDIX—THE CONSTITUTION OF IOWA . . . . .	100
INDEX . . . . .	137



SENATOR WILLIAM S. KENYON  
GOV. GEORGE W. CLARKE

SENATOR ALBERT B. CUMMINS  
SUPT. ALBERT M. DEYOE

# THE GOVERNMENT OF IOWA

## CHAPTER I

### HISTORICAL SKETCH

**The Indians.** — When the white men first saw the country which we now call Iowa it was in the possession of the American Indians. Various Indian tribes lived in this region at different times, the principal tribes being the Sacs and Foxes, the Sioux, the Ioways, the Pottawattamies, and the Winnebagoes. The Sacs and Foxes and the Sioux were bitter enemies, and many fierce battles were fought between them until the United States government stepped in and put an end to their warfare.

Later, when the white people wanted to build homes and lay out farms in the Iowa country, the government made treaties and bought the land from the Indians, who were then removed to reservations in the South and West.

At present the only Indians living in Iowa are the Meskwakis, a remnant of the Foxes, who own land in Tama County. We have many reminders, however, of the Indians who once roamed over this region, for many Iowa creeks, rivers, towns, townships, and counties have Indian names; while the name "Iowa" itself is of Indian origin.



**French Explorers.** — The first white men to explore the upper Mississippi River were two Frenchmen — Marquette and Joliet — and they were also the first to see the Iowa country. Early in the summer of 1673 they came paddling down the broad river, and on the 25th of June they landed on Iowa soil near the mouth of the Iowa River. Here they found a pathway which they followed some distance inland until they came to a village of friendly Indians with whom they made a brief visit. It is of this incident that Longfellow wrote in *Hiawatha* when he described the visit of the black-robed priest.

In the years which followed the voyage of Marquette and Joliet many other French explorers and fur traders came to the Mississippi Valley. In 1682 the brave La Salle journeyed down the Mississippi to its mouth and took formal possession of the country for France, naming it Louisiana in honor of the French king, Louis XIV. Father Hennepin, Le Sueur, and other Frenchmen explored the Mississippi, while traders and trappers made their way up the Des Moines and other rivers of eastern Iowa in search of furs.

**Under the Flags of France and Spain.** — Thus the first white men in the Iowa country were Frenchmen who voyaged up and down the Mississippi or traded with the Indians; and for many years the land belonged to France. In 1734 the French government sent an expedition from Montreal against the Sac and Fox Indians, and early in the following year a battle was fought near the site of the present city of Des Moines.

In 1762 all of the province of Louisiana, including the

Iowa country, was ceded by France to Spain, which nation exercised dominion until 1800.

During these years it was the policy of the Spanish government to grant land to men who wanted to make settlements, and at least three of these land grants were located on Iowa soil. Julien Dubuque, the first white settler in Iowa, was granted a strip of land near the site of the present city of Dubuque, where he worked the lead mines. A man named Louis Honoré or Tesson had a farm and an orchard on a Spanish land grant in Lee County; and Basil Giard occupied a grant in Clayton County.

In 1800 Napoleon Bonaparte, who was then at the height of his power, demanded that Spain give the province of Louisiana back to France, and in that year the Iowa country once more came under the control of the French.

**The Louisiana Purchase.** — But in 1803 Napoleon was badly in need of money with which to carry on his military campaigns. Besides, he did not wish his American possessions to fall into the hands of the English, who could easily come down from Canada. He therefore surprised every one by selling the entire province of Louisiana to the United States for about fifteen million dollars. Since that memorable year the American flag has floated continuously over the Iowa country.

**The Lewis and Clark Expedition.** — It was in the year following the purchase of Louisiana that Lewis and Clark made their wonderful expedition to the Pacific coast. Passing up the Missouri River, they were the first Americans to see the western border

of Iowa; and Sergeant Charles Floyd, the only man who died during the expedition, was buried on Iowa soil near the site of the present Sioux City. A splendid monument now marks his grave.

At about this same time Zebulon M. Pike was commissioned to explore the upper Mississippi River. He stopped several times on Iowa soil, and the journal of his expedition furnishes an excellent account of how the eastern border of Iowa looked at that time.

**Early Governments.** — At first, from 1804 to 1805, the United States government included the Iowa country in what was called the District of Louisiana. Then, from 1805 to 1812, it was a part of the territory of Louisiana; and from 1812 to 1821 it was embraced within the territory of Missouri. From 1821 to 1834 there was no local government over the Iowa country. But as a matter of fact this made very little difference, since there were no white people living here permanently, and there was little or no need for government.

**The Black Hawk Purchase.** — In the year 1832 there occurred in Wisconsin and northern Illinois a war, known as the Black Hawk War, between the United States troops and the Sac and Fox and other Indian tribes under the leadership of the famous warrior, Black Hawk. After a short but vigorous campaign the Indians were defeated. As a result, on September 21, 1832, a treaty was signed on Rock Island by which the Sac and Fox Indians gave up a strip of land about fifty miles wide lying along the Mississippi in what is now Iowa. This strip of land was known as "The Black Hawk Purchase" and it was here that the first white settlements in Iowa were made.

**The First Settlements.** — On June 1, 1833, the date when the Black Hawk Purchase Treaty went into effect, a stream of settlers began to pour across the Mississippi into the Iowa country. Soon the land which so lately had been the haunt of roving Indian tribes was dotted with the farms and cabins of American pioneers. Clearings were made in the woodlands along the streams, and claims were staked out on the prairies; although at first the settlers greatly preferred to be near timber land.

Towns and villages also sprang up. Dubuque, Davenport, Burlington, Muscatine (first called Bloomington), Fort Madison, and Keokuk were among the earliest towns, and they rapidly became thriving centers of trade.

**The Claim Associations.** — For several years after the first settlers came to Iowa the land was not surveyed, and hence no legal titles could be given. In fact, the settlers had no right to the land until it had been surveyed and offered for sale. And so, in order to protect themselves in their claims and in the improvements which they had made they formed Claim Associations. All of the settlers of a given region banded together, adopted rules, made a record of the land which each one claimed, and agreed to protect each other against claim jumpers. When the land sales finally occurred the Claim Association chose bidders who bid in the land claimed by all the members of the association.

**The Territory of Michigan.** — By the end of the first year several thousand people had settled in the Iowa country. Most of them were peaceable, law-abid-



ing settlers, who came to found homes. But unfortunately there were a few desperadoes and lawless people, and there soon arose a demand for courts and the means of enforcing the law. And so in 1834 the jurisdiction of the territory of Michigan, which then also included what is now Wisconsin, was extended over the Iowa country.

It was during the period of the territory of Michigan, from 1834 to 1836, that the first counties and townships in Iowa were established. The Black Hawk Purchase was divided by a line running due west from the lower end of Rock Island, the northern part being called Dubuque County and the southern part Des Moines County. All of Dubuque County also constituted one township called Julien; and all of Des Moines County was included in Flint Hills Township.

**The Territory of Wisconsin.** — In 1836 the territory of Wisconsin was established, embracing the country now included in Wisconsin, Iowa, Minnesota, and the eastern half of North and South Dakota. As a matter of fact, fully one half of the people of the territory of Wisconsin lived in the Iowa country, and after the first session of the legislature the capital of the Territory was located at Burlington on the western side of the Mississippi.

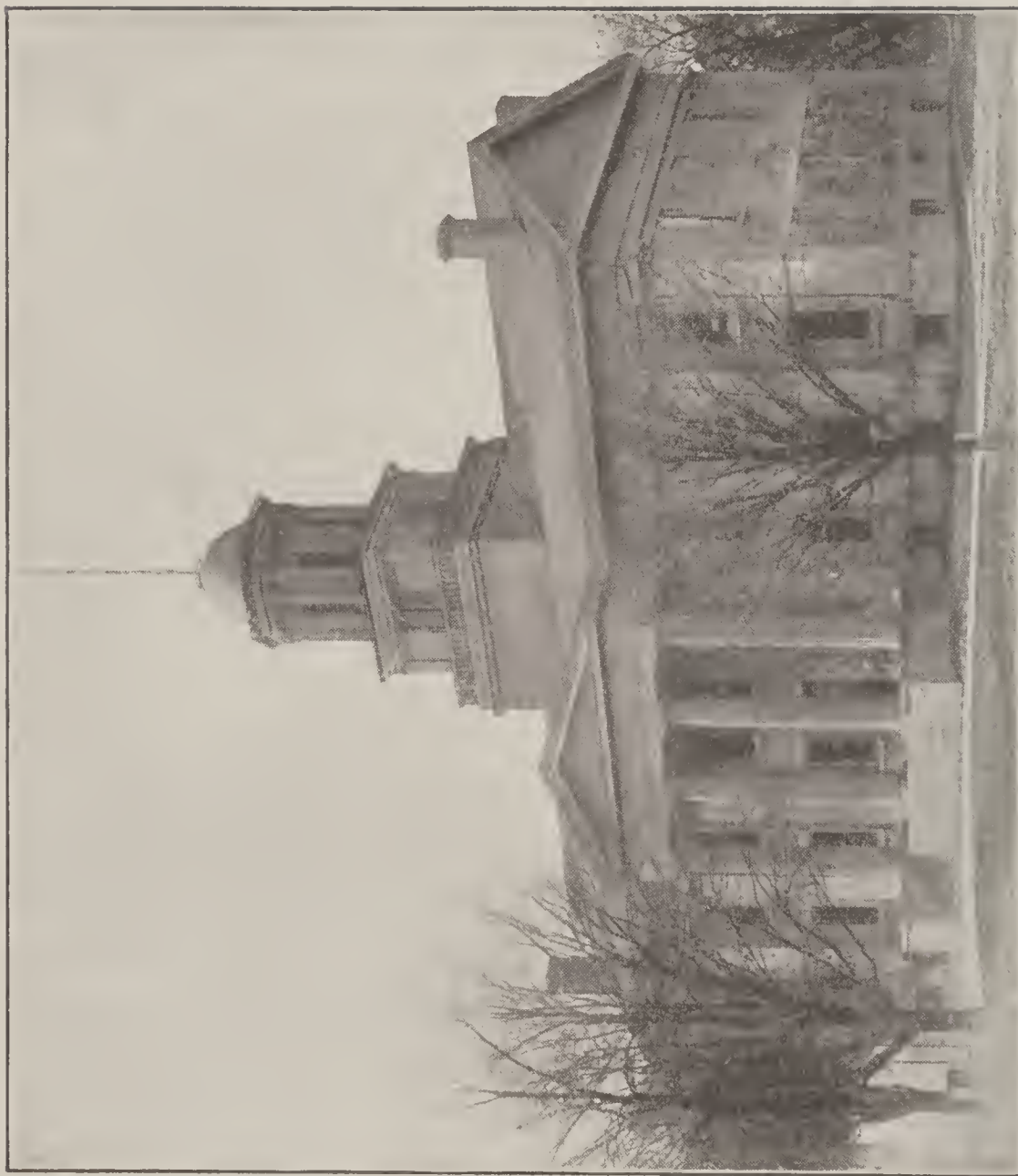
Among the many laws enacted by the legislature of the territory of Wisconsin were acts dividing the original counties of Dubuque and Des Moines into twenty-one counties, and establishing territorial roads in the Iowa country. The Governor of the Territory was Henry Dodge, whose son, Augustus C. Dodge, was later a United States Senator from Iowa.

**The Territory of Iowa.** — Soon, however, the population of the Iowa country became so large that a separate territorial government was demanded. Consequently, in 1838 the territory of Wisconsin was divided and the part west of the Mississippi became the territory of Iowa, which included not only the present state of Iowa, but also the greater part of Minnesota and the eastern half of North and South Dakota.

The first governor of the territory of Iowa was Robert Lucas, who had formerly been Governor of the state of Ohio. One of the chief events of his administration was the dispute over the location of the boundary line between Missouri and the territory of Iowa. The controversy became very bitter, and at one time armed men gathered on both sides of the line. But hostilities were averted and later the question was settled by the Supreme Court of the United States.

It was during the administration of Robert Lucas also that the seat of government was located at Iowa City. Burlington remained the temporary capital for three years, the first session of the legislature being held in Old Zion Church. But in 1839 the present site of Iowa City was chosen as the location for the seat of government, and on July 4, 1840, there was laid the cornerstone of the Old Stone Capitol, which at present is the administration building of the State University of Iowa.

John Chambers of Kentucky was the second Governor of the territory of Iowa. It was he who made the treaty with the Sac and Fox Indians by which these Indians gave up practically all of the central part of the State. The last Governor of the Territory was James Clarke.



OLD STONE CAPITOL AT IOWA CITY

During the period of the territory of Iowa, from 1838 to 1846, many new counties were established, a large number of territorial roads were laid out, and the settlements spread westward nearly to the center of the present State.

**Admission into the Union.** — As citizens of a territory the people of Iowa had no voice in the selection of their Governor; they had only one representative in Congress (the Delegate to Congress) who could not vote; and in other ways they were not on the same footing with the people of the states. And so as soon as the population became large enough there began an agitation in favor of statehood. At first when the question was submitted to the people they voted decisively against being admitted into the Union. But in 1844 the vote was in favor of statehood.

A constitutional convention met at Iowa City and drew up a constitution which was submitted to Congress for its approval. But Congress did not approve of the boundaries for the new State as prescribed in the constitution, and new boundaries were substituted. The boundaries proposed by Congress did not suit the people of Iowa, and so they rejected the constitution when it was submitted to a popular vote.

Two years later another constitutional convention assembled at Iowa City and drew up a new constitution containing the boundaries of the State as they exist to-day. This constitution met with favor in Congress and was adopted by the people. On December 28, 1846, the President of the United States signed the act of Congress admitting Iowa into the Union as a state.



**The Constitution of 1846.** — The constitution under which Iowa was admitted into the Union differed from the present constitution in only a few respects. For instance, the General Assembly convened on the first Monday in December instead of on the second Monday in January; the term of office of the Governor was four years instead of two; there was no Lieutenant Governor; the number of members of the General Assembly was smaller; the Justices of the Supreme Court were elected by the legislature instead of by the people; and there were other minor differences.

**The Constitution of 1857.** — The constitution of 1846 did not meet with the approval of all the people in all respects, partly for political reasons, and as time went on the objections to it became more numerous. As a result, in 1857 members were elected to another constitutional convention which met at Iowa City and drew up the present state constitution.

During this same year the capital was removed from Iowa City to Des Moines, although the present state-house was not erected until many years later.

**Iowa and the Civil War.** — The people of Iowa did their full share in supporting the Union during the Civil War. About 78,000 men out of a total population of less than 700,000 people in the State were in service in the northern armies during the war. This number is said to be larger than the number of men in Washington's armies at any one time during the Revolutionary War. Over 12,000 Iowa men were killed in battle and nearly 9000 were wounded; while nearly 10,000 were discharged because of ill health.

Iowa men were especially prominent in the battles

of Shiloh, Corinth, Wilson's Creek, Pea Ridge, in the sieges of Vicksburg and Fort Donelson, and on Sherman's march to the sea. A number of Iowa soldiers attained high rank in the army on account of distinguished service.

**Later History.** — The history of Iowa since the Civil War is a story of progress and development. Railroads have been built until now it is not possible to find a spot in Iowa that is not within easy reach of some railroad. Iowa has become one of the greatest agricultural states in the Union; and there has also been a great growth in manufactures within the State. In the political councils of the nation and in Congress Iowa men have played prominent parts. In fact, it is a far cry from the Iowa of pioneer days to the Iowa of to-day.

**SUGGESTIONS.** — Pupils should be encouraged to study the history of the State and of the locality in which they live.

A list of references on various topics in Iowa history may be secured from the State Historical Society of Iowa at Iowa City.

The differences between a territory and a state should be clearly pointed out.

Pupils should learn the names of the Governors of Iowa. A list may be found in the *Iowa Official Register*.

### QUESTIONS

1. What were the principal Indian tribes which once lived in Iowa? What Indians live in Iowa to-day?

2. What white men first saw the Iowa country? Who gave the name to Louisiana?

3. What foreign nations once exercised dominion over Iowa? How did Napoleon's fortunes affect Iowa?
4. Who was Julien Dubuque?
5. When did the Iowa country come into the possession of the United States?
6. What Americans first saw the western border of Iowa?
7. What were the first territorial governments over the Iowa country?
8. What was the Black Hawk War?
9. What were the Claim Associations?
10. What were the first counties in Iowa? The first townships?
11. Name the Governors of the territory of Iowa.
12. At what three places has the capital of Iowa been located?
13. When was Iowa admitted into the Union?
14. In what respects did the constitution of 1846 differ from the present constitution? When was the present constitution adopted?
15. When was the capital removed to Des Moines?

## CHAPTER II

### SCHOOLS

THE first form of government with which young people come into contact outside of their homes is to be found in the school. The people choose a school board, which hires teachers and gives them authority to make and enforce rules for the government of the pupils. If the teacher did not have this right, the school could not be run successfully.

**Origin of the Public School System.** — The American people have always been great believers in the importance of education and they have insisted that every one, whether rich or poor, should have an opportunity to gain an education. In the famous Ordinance of 1787 it was declared that “religion, morality, and knowledge being necessary to good government and the happiness of mankind, schools and the means of education shall forever be encouraged.” And so when settlers first came into these western states schools were established as soon as several families settled within a few miles of each other. In Iowa for several years the cost of running the schools was paid chiefly by those who had children in attendance, but later a free public school system was established; so that now the schools are supported by taxation, and any child may attend the school in his own district free of charge.



**School Townships.** — There are two kinds of school corporations in Iowa, namely, the school township, which usually coincides in boundaries with the congressional township; and the independent district. The school board may divide the school township into as many subdistricts as “justice, equity, and the interests of the people require,” the number in the majority of cases being nine. All the schools in the school township are managed by one board of directors.

**Independent Districts.** — In regions where people are few and scattered the school township system meets all needs. But in cities and towns and in more densely settled rural communities there is a demand for schools with more teachers and more advanced courses of study. And so it has been provided by law that the people may vote to establish an independent school district, in which they may decide for themselves all questions concerning the management of the schools and elect their own board of directors.

**The Annual Meeting.** — On the second Monday in March each year, a meeting is held of the voters in each school corporation, at which time members of the board of directors are chosen. At this meeting taxes may also be voted for the support of the schools, and the directors may be instructed by the people concerning the textbooks to be used, the branches to be taught, and various other affairs connected with the management of the schools. In independent districts containing a city or incorporated town, the people also elect a school treasurer.

**Voters at School Elections.** — In order to vote at school elections, a person must have the same qualifi-

cations as are required for voting at the general elections. (See chapter on Elections.) On all questions of issuing bonds for school purposes or of increasing the school taxes, however, women having the proper qualifications may also vote.

**The School Board.** — In school townships which are divided into subdistricts the board of directors is composed of one director from each subdistrict. If there should be only two subdistricts, then a third director is elected at large by the voters of the whole school township. Where the school township is not divided into subdistricts the board consists of three members elected at large, as is also the case in rural independent districts. In independent districts containing cities of the first class or cities under special charters there are seven school directors; while in districts containing cities of the second class or towns the number is five.

The board of directors has general management of all school affairs, such as the erection, care, and repair of school buildings, the purchase of supplies, the adoption of courses of study, and the hiring of teachers.

**The Secretary.** — It is the duty of the secretary to keep a record of the votes cast at school elections and of the proceedings of the board of directors at all their meetings. He preserves all papers and documents relating to the business of the school district, gives notice of meetings, countersigns all the warrants and drafts drawn or signed by the president of the board, and files an annual report with the county superintendent, giving a great many facts concerning the schools of his district.

**The Treasurer.** — The treasurer receives all money belonging to the school corporation and pays it out, upon orders of the president countersigned by the secretary. He must keep an accurate account of all the money passing through his hands and make an annual report both to the board of directors and to the county superintendent.

**The Hiring of Teachers.** — All teachers are hired by the board of directors. The president of the board and the teacher both sign a contract stating the length of time the school is to be taught, the compensation to be received, and various other matters.

No person, however, can be employed as a teacher in the public schools without having a certificate from the State Board of Examiners stating that he or she is qualified to teach.

**Textbooks.** — The board of directors decides what textbooks shall be used in the schools, but they cannot change textbooks oftener than every five years unless the people of the school district vote in favor of such a change. They may, if they choose, purchase textbooks and other supplies and sell them to the pupils at cost. Furthermore, if the people of the county outside of cities and towns vote in favor of such a plan, uniform textbooks are adopted for all the rural schools in the county. The people of any school corporation may also vote in favor of free textbooks, in which case textbooks are purchased by the board of directors and loaned to the pupils, who return them to the board when they have finished using them.

**Tuition.** — As long as pupils attend the schools in their own district, no charge is made. But when, for

any reason, they attend a school in another district a certain amount of money called tuition must be paid. For instance, the law provides that pupils from rural communities may attend the high school in the nearest city or town, and their tuition must be paid by the school corporation in which they live.

**Compulsory Education.** — It is not only a privilege to go to school, but in Iowa, as in most other states, parents and guardians are required by law to send all children between the ages of seven and sixteen to school for at least twenty-four consecutive weeks each year. Penalties are imposed for violations of this law, and provision is made for truant officers whose business it is to see that all children attend school.

**SUGGESTIONS.** — Pupils should attend an annual school meeting and observe what is done.

Pupils should be required to make a list of the names of the school officers of the district in which they live, and to make a map showing the boundaries of the district.

Copies of the school laws of the State should be in every school library.

### QUESTIONS

1. What did the Ordinance of 1787 say regarding education?

2. How are the public schools in Iowa supported?

3. What kinds of school corporations are there in Iowa?

4. What are usually the boundaries of the school township?

5. What are subdistricts?

6. Does each school in the school township have a separate board of directors?

7. What are the differences between the school township



and the independent district? How are independent districts established?

8. When is the annual school meeting held? What is done at that meeting? Who may vote?

9. Of how many members is the school board composed? When does the board hold meetings? What are the duties of the board?

10. What are the duties of the secretary?

11. What are the duties of the treasurer?

12. How are teachers hired?

13. How are textbooks chosen?

14. For what pupils must tuition be paid?

15. Between what ages are children required to attend school? For how long a period?

# CHAPTER III

## TOWNSHIPS

The Congressional Township. — Besides the school townships already mentioned, there are two other kinds of townships : congressional townships and civil townships. The congressional township is a tract of land six miles square. It is so named because in 1785 Con-

TOWNSHIP 2 NORTH  RANGE 2 WEST	TOWNSHIP 2 NORTH  RANGE 1 WEST	MERIDIAN	TOWNSHIP 2 NORTH  RANGE 1 EAST	TOWNSHIP 2 NORTH  RANGE 2 EAST
TOWNSHIP 1 NORTH  RANGE 2 WEST	TOWNSHIP 1 NORTH  RANGE 1 WEST  BASE		TOWNSHIP 1 NORTH  RANGE 1 EAST  LINE	TOWNSHIP 1 NORTH  RANGE 2 EAST

FIGURE 1

gress passed a law requiring that all the land in the new states and territories should be surveyed into townships six miles square and into sections in order that it might be possible to locate pieces of land and tell how many acres there were in each piece.

Land Surveys. — When the surveyors began their work they first established two lines from which to proceed : a base line running east and west, and a prin-

cipal meridian running north and south. Townships were then formed by running lines parallel to the base line and the principal meridian. The townships thus

6	5	4	3	2	1
7	8	9	10	11	12
18	17	16	15	14	13
19	20	21	22	23	24
30	29	28	27	26	25
31	32	33	34	35	36

FIGURE 2

formed were numbered, those in the first row north or south of the base line being numbered “township one north” or “township one south” and those in the second row “township two north” or “township two south,” and so on; while the townships in the rows or ranges east and west of the principal meridian

were designated as “range one east” or “range one west” and so on. Thus a township in the tenth row north of the base line and in the sixth row west of the principal meridian would be described as “township ten north, range six west.”

(See Figure 1.) The base line from which the congressional townships in Iowa are numbered passes east and west through the central part of Arkansas, while the ranges are numbered east and west from the fifth principal meridian which runs north and south along the western boundary of Jackson, Clinton, and Scott counties in this State.



FIGURE 3

Each congressional township is divided into thirty-

six sections, one mile square, which are numbered as is shown in Figure 2, beginning in the northeast corner. Furthermore, sections are often surveyed into halves, quarters, and even smaller subdivisions, as is shown in Figure 3, in order that small pieces of land may be definitely described.

**The Civil Township.** — A civil township is the organization of the people living on a certain tract of land for purposes of local government. Roads must be cared for, bridges must be built, and there is need for peace officers ; and so to provide for these and other needs of the people, township governments are established. The boundaries of the civil townships usually coincide with those of the congressional townships in Iowa, but this is not always the case, nor is it necessary. Rivers often form the boundaries of civil townships and in several counties there are more civil townships than congressional townships. Civil townships are established by the County Board of Supervisors and they are named instead of numbered.

**Functions of the Township.** — In New England the township or “ town ” was and still is a very important unit of government. The people met together in the “ town meeting,” where they not only elected township officers, but discussed and decided all questions relating to their common welfare. In Iowa, however, the people take no direct part in township affairs except to elect officers every two years at the general elections and occasionally vote on the question of raising taxes for various purposes. In fact, the business of the township is transacted entirely by the officers in accordance with general laws passed by the legislature, just as is



the case in the county and the State. The civil township is merely a subdivision of the county for purposes of local government, and it is not even a body corporate, capable of suing and being sued.

**Township Officers.** — The following township officers are elected by the people and serve for terms of two years : three trustees, a clerk, two justices of the peace, two constables, and an assessor. Men are not very anxious to hold township offices, since there are a great many duties to perform and comparatively little pay. Any one who refuses to serve when elected to a township office is liable to a fine of five dollars. But no person can be forced to serve for more than one term.

**The Township Trustees.** — The most important officers in the township are the three Township Trustees, who perform a great variety of duties. They care for the roads, act as fence viewers, decide cases of disagreement over drainage outlets, assess damages caused by animals running at large, have general charge of elections in the township, supervise the care of the poor, act as a board of equalization in determining the valuation of property for taxation, serve as a board of health, and perform several other duties.

**The Township Clerk.** — The Township Clerk is required to attend all meetings of the Township Trustees and keep a record of their proceedings. He also acts as treasurer of the township and has important functions in connection with elections and the listing of property for taxation.

**The Justices of the Peace.** — Two Justices of the Peace are elected biennially in each township. The powers and duties of these officers, whose chief business

is to hold court for the trial of minor cases, are discussed in Chapter VIII.

**The Constables.** — In each township every two years the people elect two Constables, whose duty it is to maintain the peace and arrest offenders against the law. They are also the ministerial officers of the Justices of the Peace, for whom they serve warrants, subpoenas, and other writs and legal papers of various kinds.

**The Assessor.** — The Assessor is an important local officer. He is elected biennially by the people of the township, and his duties are confined to the township. He is required every year to make a complete list of the property of all the taxpayers in the township and to state the value of the property assessed by him. He must begin his work immediately after the second Monday of January in each year and he must have the task completed before the first day of April. The Assessor is also required annually to collect information and statistics relative to population, crops, and live stock, and to take an enumeration of the population of the township every ten years for the state census.

**The Compensation of Township Officers.** — Township officers receive no fixed yearly salaries. Their compensation is paid either in fees, or in a percentage of the public money collected or handled, or by a *per diem* — that is, so much per day during the performance of their duties. These amounts, which are fixed by law, vary according to the officer and the service performed. As a rule, however, the compensation is so small that township offices have little attraction from a financial standpoint.

SUGGESTIONS. — Pupils should have access to a good map of the State showing township lines and should notice in how many cases the boundaries of the civil township coincide with those of the congressional township.

Pupils should learn the number and range of their congressional township and the description of the land on which they live.

It would be interesting for pupils to learn who their township officers are and talk with them concerning the duties which they perform.

### QUESTIONS

1. What is the purpose of the congressional township? What is its size?

2. How was the land surveyed? How are pieces of land described in order to locate them?

3. What is the purpose of the civil township? What are its boundaries?

4. Name the township officers. How are they elected?

5. What are the duties of the Township Trustees? Of the Clerk? Of the Justices of the Peace? Of the Constables? Of the Assessor?

6. How are township officers paid?

## CHAPTER IV

### CITIES AND TOWNS

As soon as any considerable number of families settle near each other there arises the need of a definite local government to look after the common interests and promote the comfort and health of all the people. For instance, there must be fire and police protection, a water system and sewers, sidewalks, and graded or paved streets. And so a town government is formed, and later if the population increases sufficiently, a city government, with somewhat greater powers, is established. In order that such governments may be established the town or city must become incorporated according to a general law.

**Classification of Municipalities.** — Towns and cities are often spoken of as municipalities and their governments as municipal governments. According to the law in Iowa, there are the following classes of municipalities: towns, having a population of less than 2000; cities of the second class, having a population between 2000 and 15,000; cities of the first class, having a population of 15,000 or over; special charter cities, organized by the legislature prior to the adoption of the present constitution in 1857; and cities operating under the commission plan of government.

**Powers of Cities and Towns.** — The powers and duties of municipal governments are prescribed in



laws passed by the General Assembly and the officers of cities and towns cannot do anything which they are not authorized to do by law. In general, the law declares that municipalities may make ordinances "to provide for the safety, preserve the health, promote the prosperity, improve the morals, order, comfort, and convenience" of the people of the town or city and "enforce obedience to such ordinances by fine not exceeding one hundred dollars, or by imprisonment not exceeding thirty days." For instance, municipalities provide for the paving, care, and lighting of the streets and alleys; they provide for water systems, lighting plants, and sewers; they maintain police forces; they license theaters, circuses, hotels, peddlers, plumbers, and the like; they provide parks, playgrounds, and libraries, and do many other things to promote the safety and comfort of the inhabitants.

**Municipal Officers.** — All the cities and towns in the State, except cities operating under commission government, have about the same set of officers, varying in number according to population.

In each town or city there is a Council, which may be called the legislative branch of the municipal government. In towns the Council is composed of five members elected at large; while in cities of the first and second classes it consists of one member elected from each ward and two elected at large, so that the number varies according to the number of wards. The election of all municipal officers is held on the last Monday in March and their term of office is two years. Councilmen in cities of the first class may receive \$250 a year, besides the sum of two dollars a day for

performing certain extra services; while in cities of the second class and in towns they cannot receive more than fifty dollars a year.

The Mayor is the principal executive officer in the town or city. It is his duty to see that peace and order are maintained in the municipality and that all ordinances are enforced. He presides over the meetings of the Council, over which he has a limited veto power; holds court in which offenders against the city ordinances are tried unless there is a police court or Superior Court in the city; and possesses the same jurisdiction as the Justice of the Peace. He is required to appoint a Marshal, a Health Physician, a Street Commissioner, and as many policemen as the Council may deem necessary. No definite salary is fixed by law for the Mayor, his compensation being determined by the Council.

Other municipal officers who are elected by the people are: a Treasurer and an Assessor, in all towns and cities; and a City Attorney, an Auditor, a City Engineer, and a Police Judge, in cities of the first class. In all cases the Council appoints a City Clerk, and in towns and cities of the second class it appoints a City Attorney.

**The Commission Plan of City Government.** — A special form of city government which has gained considerable popularity throughout the United States during recent years is the commission plan. In Iowa the plan was first indorsed by citizens of Des Moines, and for that reason is quite often spoken of as the "Des Moines Plan." At first the General Assembly passed a law declaring that all cities of 25,000 or over might adopt the commission plan of government, but

now any city of 2000 or over may vote to adopt the plan.

Under the commission plan there is a Mayor and either two or four Councilmen according to population, all of whom are nominated and elected by the people of the city at large in a non-partisan manner. The Mayor and the Councilmen each have complete charge of some department of the city's business, such as finance, public safety, streets and public improvements, and parks and public property. The Council chooses all other city officers and all necessary assistants, and the Council is thus held responsible for the proper administration of the government of the city. The salary of the Mayor varies from \$600 to \$3500 and that of Councilmen from \$450 to \$3000, according to the population of the city.

The purpose of the commission plan is to secure a more businesslike city government by reducing the number of officials, offering better salaries, and securing more expert service. Moreover, under this plan the officers may be held responsible for their acts, for if the people do not like the actions of the Mayor or Councilmen, they may vote to remove any or all of those officers and elect new ones. And the people may also take a hand in the passing of ordinances if the Council does not carry out their wishes.

SUGGESTIONS. — Pupils will find it very interesting to learn all they can about the history of the town or city in which they live.

The *Iowa Official Register* should be consulted for a list of the cities of the various classes.

Pupils should read magazine articles concerning the

commission form of city government or the city manager plan.

Pupils might obtain permission to attend a meeting of the town or city council. They should inform themselves concerning the manner in which the affairs of the city are managed.

### QUESTIONS

1. What is the purpose of town and city governments?
2. What are the different classes of municipalities in Iowa? In what class is the city or town in which you live?
3. What are the powers of municipalities?
4. How many members may there be on the Council? How many are there in your city? What is the compensation of Councilmen?
5. When are municipal elections held?
6. What are the duties of the Mayor?
7. What other municipal officers are there?
8. What are the main features of the commission plan of city government? What cities may adopt the plan?



## CHAPTER V

### COUNTIES

**Organization.** — The state of Iowa has been divided by the legislature into ninety-nine counties for purposes of local government and in order to make it possible to enforce the laws of the State more easily.

The first counties were established in 1834, when the Iowa country was a part of the territory of Michigan. These two counties, which were known as “ Dubuque ” and “ Des Moines,” included all of what is now the eastern border of Iowa. Then, as the country became more thickly settled, new counties were organized until at last the entire State was divided into counties as it is at the present time.

The counties of Iowa vary somewhat in size and area. Over half of them are rectangular in form and contain either twelve or sixteen congressional townships, or either 432 or 576 square miles. The other counties are irregular in shape and area. The boundaries of some of the counties have been changed several times, and some of them at one time had different names from those which they now bear.

**The County Seat.** — The place where the government of the county is carried on is called the county seat. This place may be changed by a vote of a majority of the voters of the county.

At the county seat is the courthouse, the building

where the county officers have their offices, where the district court holds its sessions, and where the records, books, and papers of the county are kept. Adjoining the courthouse there is usually the county jail and a residence for the Sheriff. County offices are open from 8 o'clock A.M. to 5 o'clock P.M.

**County Officers.** — The officers of the county consist of a Board of Supervisors, an Auditor, a Treasurer, a Recorder, a County Attorney, a Clerk of the District Court, a Sheriff, a Coroner, and a Superintendent of Schools, all of whom are elected by the people except the last one. The term of office of all county officers except the Superintendent and Supervisors is two years.

**The Board of Supervisors.** — The Board of Supervisors consists of from three to seven members, the number varying in different counties according to the wish of the people. About three-fifths of the counties of the State have three Supervisors; only three counties have as many as seven. The Supervisors are elected for a term of three years, and they retire in rotation. The county may either be divided into districts for the election of Supervisors or they may be elected at large, but no two shall be chosen from any one township.

The Board of Supervisors exercises general supervision over all the affairs of the county. The members choose their own presiding officer, and a majority of the members constitutes a quorum for the transaction of business. Regular meetings of the Board are held on the second secular day in January, the first Monday in April and June, and the second Monday in September and November each year.

The powers and duties of the Board of Supervisors

are very numerous. It makes all appropriations from the county funds; while the members also exercise administrative powers and have general supervision of the actions of the other county officers. Among the most important duties of the Board are: to examine and settle all accounts of the receipts and expenditures of the county; to examine and allow all rightful claims against the county; to fix the compensation of all county and township officers not otherwise provided for by law; to establish and name townships; to lay out or discontinue roads and build necessary bridges in the county; to buy land for a poor farm, build a poorhouse, or provide for the care of the poor in some other manner; and to fill vacancies in offices by appointment until the next election. In fact, the Board is given the power "to make such rules and regulations, not inconsistent with law, as it may deem necessary for its own government, the transaction of business, and the preservation of order." Many other minor powers might be mentioned.

**The County Auditor.** — The County Auditor might be spoken of as the secretary or clerk of the Board of Supervisors. It is his duty to keep a record of all the proceedings and resolutions of the Board in books provided for that purpose and see that they are published in some newspaper of the county. He signs all orders of the Board for the payment of money, and he records in a book the reports of the County Treasurer concerning the receipts and expenditures of county funds. In connection with elections he performs many important functions, such as furnishing poll books, making up the official ballot for the county, receiving

the election returns, and issuing certificates of election to county officers. The County Auditor also performs numerous duties in connection with taxation and keeps a record of the transfer of all real estate within the county.

**The County Treasurer.** — The County Treasurer receives and collects all the taxes and other money belonging to the county. He also pays out money, but only on orders signed by the County Auditor. In this way the taxpayers of the county are protected from fraud, since a complete record of all financial transactions is kept in the offices of both the Auditor and the Treasurer, and one is a check against the other. Furthermore, both of these officers are required to give heavy bonds, so that in case any money should be lost or stolen by these officers the county may compel the bondsmen to pay back the amount. And, finally, the taxpayers of the county are able to tell how their money is expended because the Supervisors are required to publish an account of all their proceedings.

**The County Recorder.** — It is the duty of the County Recorder to keep a record of all instruments in writing, such as deeds to land and property, mortgages, and articles of incorporation. All deeds to real estate, however, must first be presented to the County Auditor and recorded in the books in his office; and afterwards a similar record is made by the Recorder. Thus a record of all changes in the titles to land within the county is to be found in both offices. In counties having a population of less than ten thousand the offices of Recorder and Treasurer may both be held by one



person. The office of Recorder may be held by a woman.

**The County Attorney.** — The County Attorney is an officer whose business it is to take charge of all criminal prosecutions within the county, and to defend the interests of the county in all suits which may be brought against it. He also acts as the legal adviser of the other county officers in all matters concerning which they need such advice; and has the power to begin proceedings to secure the removal of certain officers for neglect of duty.

**The Clerk of the District Court.** — The duties of this county officer are for the most part connected with the work of the District Court, as the name would indicate. He keeps a record of all the cases brought before the court, from the time the suit is commenced until the final judgment is made and executed. If the court is not in session, he is authorized to make appointments of executors, administrators, and guardians, who serve until the next term of court.

Aside from these duties the Clerk issues and records marriage licenses, and keeps a register of births and deaths within the county.

**The Sheriff.** — The office of Sheriff is of very ancient origin. At an early period in England when the country was divided into shires, which correspond somewhat to our counties, the officer who carried out the will of the king in the shire was known as the "shire reeve," or sheriff. He was a very important official and exercised judicial as well as administrative powers. In America at the present time, however, the sheriff's duties relate almost entirely to the preservation of the

peace in the county. He has charge of the county jail; makes arrests of persons who have broken the law; serves all notices, writs, and warrants issued by the District Court; and attends the sessions of the court. If he is unable to perform all of these duties alone, he may appoint deputies, and in cases of emergency may call out the able-bodied men of the county to assist him in enforcing the law.

**The Coroner.** — This office also dates back many centuries to the early history of England, where the office was created chiefly to limit the power of the Sheriff. In Iowa almost the only function of the Coroner is to summon a jury of three persons and hold inquests over the bodies of all persons who come to their death, either from uncertain causes or in such a manner as to lead to a suspicion of foul play. Any Justice of the Peace may hold the office of Coroner; and when the office of Sheriff is vacant the Coroner fills the position.

**The County Superintendent.** — The officer who has general supervision of the rural schools of the county is known as the County Superintendent. Formerly he was elected by the people, but now the Superintendent is chosen for a term of three years, by a convention made up of the presidents of the school boards of the county. This office may be held by a woman as well as by a man, and in fact in about two-thirds of the counties of Iowa the Superintendents are women.

It is the duty of the County Superintendent to assist teachers and school boards in all matters that will promote the welfare of the schools, to hold county institutes for the instruction of teachers, to conduct

examinations of those desiring teachers' certificates, and, in general, to guide and direct the rural school activities of the county.

**The Compensation of County Officers.** — The members of the Board of Supervisors receive four dollars a day while engaged in the duties of their office, together with mileage at the rate of five cents a mile. The other officers are either paid salaries ranging from \$1100 to \$3500 a year according to the office and the population of the county or in some cases they receive fees as compensation for their services.

**State Examiners for Counties.** — A new set of State officers whose duties relate to the counties are the State Examiners for Counties. They are appointed by the State Auditor and are required to examine the books of county officers and to see that the accounts and reports of all the counties are made in a uniform manner.

**SUGGESTIONS.** — Study the history of your county, and learn especially when it was organized and how the name originated.

Secure a copy of the proceedings of the Board of Supervisors and use it to illustrate the functions of that body.

A copy of the annual financial report of the county should be secured and used in class.

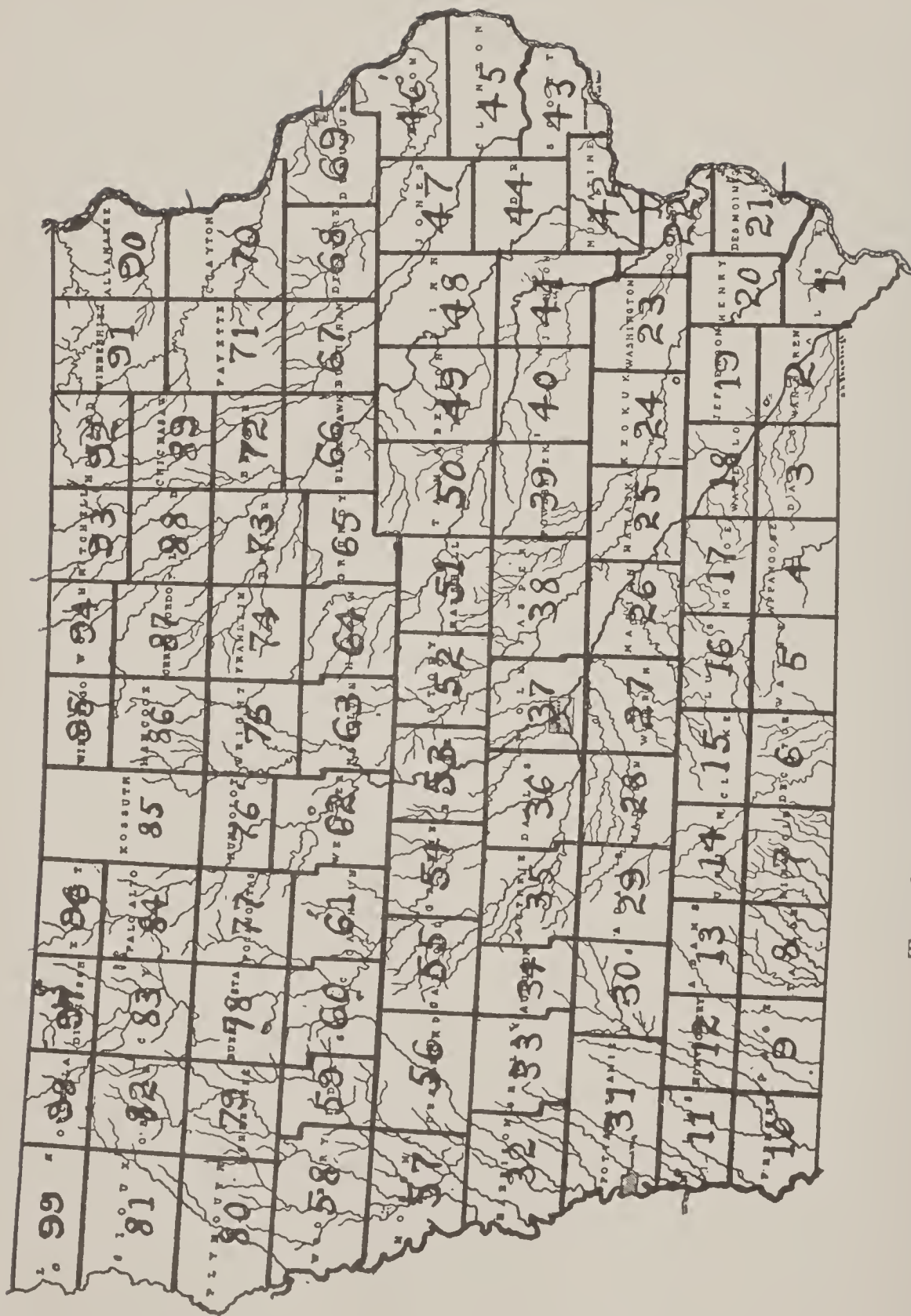
Pupils should visit the courthouse and see the various offices in which the business of the county is transacted.

Learn who your county officers are and where they live.

## QUESTIONS

1. How are counties established or organized? What were the first counties in Iowa? What are the size and shape of the counties in Iowa? Of your county?
2. What is the county seat?
3. Name the county officers. What is their term of office?
4. How many Supervisors may there be? How many in your county?
5. What are the powers and duties of the Board of Supervisors?
6. What are the duties of the County Auditor?
7. How are the taxpayers protected against fraud on the part of the County Treasurer?
8. What two county offices may be held by women? Are these offices held by women in your county?
9. What are the duties of the County Attorney? Of the Clerk of the District Court? Of the Sheriff?
10. How is the County Superintendent elected?
11. How are county officers paid for their services?





THE STATE REPRESENTATIVE DISTRICTS

## CHAPTER VI

### THE STATE — THE LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT

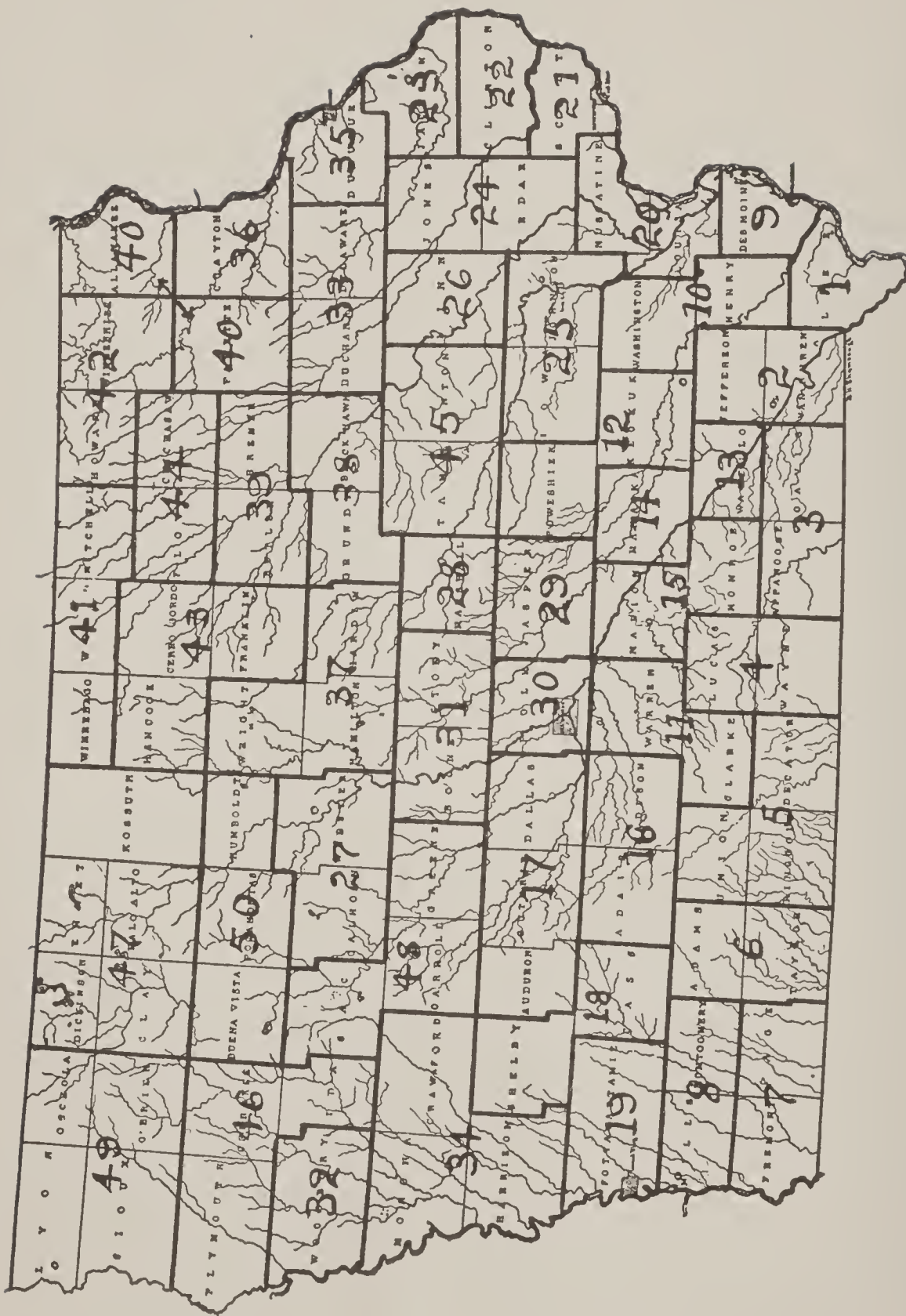
**The General Assembly.** — The legislature, or the law-making department of the State government in Iowa, is officially known as the General Assembly. It is composed of two houses or divisions: the House of Representatives, or the lower house; and the Senate, or the upper house. Although these two houses differ in respect to the number, terms, and qualifications of their members, they are equal in power.

**The House of Representatives.** — The House of Representatives is composed of one hundred eight members, elected for a term of two years by the people of the State voting by counties. Each county is entitled to elect one Representative and the nine counties having the largest population each have one additional Representative.

To be eligible to a seat in the House of Representatives a man must be a citizen of the United States, twenty-one years of age, and must have resided in the State one year and in the county sixty days prior to his election.

The presiding officer of the lower house is called the Speaker of the House of Representatives.

**The Senate.** — The Senate, or upper house, is composed of fifty members elected for a term of four years by the people of the State, voting in districts contain-



THE STATE SENATORIAL DISTRICTS



ing one or more counties. Twenty-one of the Senators are elected at one biennial election and twenty-nine at the next, so that about half of the Senators go out of office every two years.

Except that a man must be twenty-five years of age before he can be elected to the State Senate, the qualifications of Senators are the same as those of members of the House of Representatives. The Lieutenant Governor is the presiding officer of the Senate.

**Sessions of the General Assembly.** — The regular sessions of the General Assembly are held every two years in the capitol building at Des Moines, beginning on the second Monday in January in the odd-numbered years. Extra or special sessions may be called by the Governor at other times when the public welfare demands such action. The Senate and the House of Representatives each meets in a hall of its own, and except on occasions when secrecy is necessary the galleries are open to the public.

There is no limitation to the length of time which the sessions of the General Assembly may last, but as a rule the legislature adjourns about the middle of April.

**The Compensation of Members.** — At first the constitution of Iowa provided that the members of the General Assembly should receive three dollars a day while in session and three dollars for every twenty miles traveled in going to and from Des Moines. But since that time the compensation has been increased and the mileage decreased until now each member receives one thousand dollars for his services during a regular session of the legislature and five cents for



every mile traveled in going to Des Moines and returning to his home. For extra sessions the members receive ten dollars a day and the same mileage as for regular sessions. Each of the presiding officers receives twice the salary of members.

**The Method of Passing Laws.** — When a member of either house of the General Assembly wishes to have a law passed he introduces a “bill,” which is thereupon referred to one of the many standing committees appointed at the beginning of the session by the presiding officer. The committee may not think that the bill should become a law, and may either fail to make any report concerning it or may report it unfavorably. In that case, as a rule, nothing further is heard of the bill. But if the committee approves, it makes a favorable report to the house and recommends that the bill be passed.

The bill is then read several times, an opportunity for debate or discussion is offered, and, finally, a vote is taken. If a majority of the members of the house vote in favor of the bill, it is then sent to the other house, where it goes through the same process. If it should pass the second house without change or amendment, the bill is then presented to the Governor and becomes a law in case he signs it.

Each house, however, has the right to amend any bill proposed by the other house, and when any amendments are thus made the bill must be returned to the house in which it originated. If the amendments are acceptable to the house which first passed the bill, they are adopted and the bill is sent to the Governor. But in case the two houses cannot agree on the amendments

a conference committee, composed of a few members of each house, is appointed. In this way an agreement is usually reached.

All bills which become laws must pass both houses in exactly the same form by a majority vote of the members of each house, and must be signed by the Governor or passed over his veto.

**The Veto of Laws by the Governor.** — As has just been indicated, bills which are passed by the General Assembly are presented to the Governor. If he approves the bill, he signs his name to it and it then becomes a law. But if for some reason he believes the bill should not become a law, he does not sign it, but returns it to the house where it originated, with a statement of his objections. In many cases this is the end of the bill. If, however, it is again passed by both houses of the General Assembly, this time by a vote of two-thirds of the members, the bill becomes a law without the Governor's signature. In case the Governor fails to return a bill to the legislature within three days after it has been received by him (Sundays excepted), the bill becomes a law in the same manner as if he had signed it. If, however, the General Assembly adjourns before the three days have expired, the Governor is given thirty days in which to sign or veto the bill and deposit it with the Secretary of State.

**When the Laws go into Effect.** — As a rule, all general laws passed at a regular session of the General Assembly take effect on the fourth day of the following July. Acts passed at extra sessions go into effect ninety days after the legislature adjourns. But when the General Assembly deems that a law is of imme-





mediate importance, provision may be made that it shall go into effect at once upon publication in certain specified newspapers of the State.

**Limitations on the Law-making Power.** — The General Assembly of Iowa does not have unlimited power to pass laws, for the constitution places certain restrictions on the legislative power. For instance, the General Assembly cannot pass local or special laws on certain subjects. (See constitution, Art. III, Sec. 30.) It cannot change the boundary lines of counties without the consent of the people of the counties affected, nor can it create a new county having less than 432 square miles. The General Assembly cannot grant divorces nor authorize lotteries. The State cannot become indebted in excess of the sum of \$250,000, except in times of war or insurrection unless the people vote in favor of incurring additional indebtedness. Again, the General Assembly is prohibited from creating corporations by special act. A number of other restrictions are also placed on the law-making power.

**Amendments to the Constitution.** — There are two methods of amending or changing the constitution of Iowa, namely, by a regular constitutional convention, and by amendments proposed by the General Assembly and adopted by the people. The former method has never been employed in Iowa to amend the present constitution.

Several amendments, however, have been adopted by the second method, according to which all amendments must be passed by the General Assembly at two successive regular sessions and then submitted to a vote of the people. If a majority of the votes



cast are in favor of the amendment, it then becomes a part of the constitution.

SUGGESTIONS. — A copy of the session laws and of the journals of the two houses, and copies of bills should be secured for use in connection with this chapter.

The *Iowa Official Register* for the current biennial period should be secured. It contains much valuable material relative to the General Assembly.

In this connection discuss the method of electing United States Senators and Representatives and the division of the State into Congressional districts.

There should be a discussion of the initiative and referendum.

### QUESTIONS

1. What is the official name of the law-making body in Iowa?

2. How many Representatives are there? How are they elected? What is their term of office? What are their qualifications? Who is the Representative from your county?

3. How many State Senators are there? How are they elected? What is their term of office? What are their qualifications? Who is the State Senator from your district? What counties form your district?

4. When are the sessions of the General Assembly held? What is the compensation of members?

5. What is the method of enacting laws? What part does the Governor have in legislation?

6. When do laws go into effect?

7. What is the minimum area which may be included in any new county?

8. How is the constitution amended?

## CHAPTER VII

### THE STATE — THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT

**The Officers.** — The department of the State government which is best known to the people is the executive department, the duty of which is to see that the laws are carried into effect and to transact the public business of the State. The principal officials in this department are the Governor, the Lieutenant Governor, the Secretary of State, the Auditor of State, and the Treasurer of State, all of whom are elected by the people every two years; and besides these there are many other administrative officers and boards.

**Election and Term of the Governor.** — The officer in whom the supreme executive power of the State is vested is the Governor. He is elected for a term of two years by the voters of the State at the general election in November. The election returns for both the Governor and the Lieutenant Governor are sent to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, who opens them in the presence of both houses of the General Assembly. The persons having the highest number of votes for the two offices are declared elected Governor and Lieutenant Governor, respectively. If there should be a tie in the votes for either of these two officers, it would be the duty of the two houses of the General Assembly meeting in joint session to elect one of the persons whose votes were tied. No tie votes for Gov-

ernor or Lieutenant Governor have occurred thus far in the history of Iowa ; and as a matter of fact the results of elections are known long before the General Assembly meets.

**Qualifications of the Governor.** — Before a man can be elected to the office of Governor of Iowa he must be a citizen of the United States and a resident of Iowa for two years, and he must be thirty years of age.

**Powers and Duties of the Governor.** — The Governor has extensive administrative powers and duties ; and he is also commander in chief of the militia of the State.

In general it is the duty of the Governor to see that the laws of the State are faithfully executed. He transacts “ all executive business with the officers of government, civil and military, and may require information in writing from the officers of the executive department upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices.”

The relation of the Governor to the legislature is clearly stated in the constitution. At each regular session it is his duty to send to the General Assembly a message in which he discusses the condition and needs of the State and recommends such legislation as he may think necessary. The Governor may on extraordinary occasions issue a proclamation calling the General Assembly to meet in extra session, and when the two houses have convened it is his duty to inform them of the purpose for which the extra session has been called. Furthermore, as has been seen, it is the duty of the Governor to sign all bills which he approves ; while he may veto bills which he does not approve, which bills

must be passed again by a two-thirds vote of both houses of the legislature before they can become laws. Thus it will be seen that the Governor may exert a great influence over the General Assembly.

The Governor has also the power to appoint a great many officers. The constitution provides that when any office shall become vacant for any cause and no method is provided by the constitution or the laws for filling such a vacancy, the Governor shall have the power to appoint some one to fill the position until the next session of the General Assembly or the next election by the people. But in addition to this power to fill vacancies, the legislature has from time to time created new administrative offices and boards and authorized the Governor to fill these positions by appointment, sometimes solely upon his own responsibility and sometimes with the consent of the Senate. For instance, the members of the State Board of Education, the Board of Control of State Institutions, the Board of Parole, and many other boards receive their appointments in this manner.

In case of a riot or other disturbance in which the regular peace officers of the city or county are unable to restore order, the Governor may call out the militia of the State. He may offer rewards for the arrest of criminals, and it is within his power to grant reprieves or pardons to persons convicted of crime.

The Governor must keep a journal in which there is made a record of every official act which he performs.

**The Lieutenant Governor.** — The Lieutenant Governor bears the same relation to the Governor that the



Vice President of the United States bears to the President. Under ordinary circumstances his chief and practically only function is to act as the presiding officer of the Senate. But in case of the death, resignation, or disability of the Governor, the Lieutenant Governor assumes all of the powers and duties of the chief executive. Then if anything should happen to the Lieutenant Governor to prevent him from serving further as Governor, the office would fall to the president *pro tempore* of the Senate; and, finally, if this person should not be able to serve for any reason, the position and duties of the Governor would devolve upon the Speaker of the House of Representatives. Thus it is made certain that the State will not be suddenly left without a chief executive.

**The Secretary of State.** — Next to the Governor and Lieutenant Governor the most prominent administrative official is the Secretary of State. It is his duty to countersign and keep a record of all commissions and proclamations issued by the Governor. He has charge of the publication and distribution of the laws and resolutions passed by the General Assembly, and in his office are preserved the original copies of all the laws and resolutions. He provides also for the preparation and publication of the *Iowa Official Register*, a book published every two years containing all sorts of information about the State of Iowa. Many other important duties are performed by the Secretary of State, who, of course, is aided by a large number of assistants and clerks.

**The Auditor of State.** — The accounts of all the money received by the State through taxation and

other sources and of the money paid out for various purposes are kept by the Auditor of State. He draws all warrants on the State Treasurer for money to be paid out of the treasury in accordance with law. He receives and settles all claims against the State. It is his duty to apportion the interest on the permanent school fund among the counties of the State. He oversees the enforcement of the State regulations concerning the management of banks, loan and trust companies, and other similar corporations; and publishes information for the benefit of the people of the State. Every two years he is required to make a report to the Governor showing the financial condition and resources of the State.

**The Treasurer of State.** — This officer receives and has charge of all the money belonging to the State, and pays it out on orders drawn by the State Auditor in accordance with the appropriations made by the legislature. On account of the fact that he has the custody of such large sums of money he is required to give a very heavy bond. The Treasurer must keep account books in which to make a record of all money received and paid out by him.

**Salaries.** — Each of the officers above named receives a definite salary which is fixed by law. The salary of the Governor is \$5000 a year, with \$1200 additional for his services as a member of the Executive Council and an allowance of \$1200 each biennial period for house rent. The Lieutenant Governor as presiding officer of the Senate receives twice the compensation of members of the General Assembly and the same mileage. The Secretary of State, the

Auditor, and the Treasurer all receive salaries of \$3600 a year.

**The Executive Council.** — In addition to performing the regular duties of their offices the Governor, the Secretary of State, the Auditor, and the Treasurer, acting together, form the Executive Council. In this capacity they have a great many functions, among which may be mentioned the auditing of all claims of State officers and employees for expenses and *per diem*; the purchase of all supplies and furniture and the making of contracts for fuel and lights for all the State offices; the assessment of the property of railway, sleeping car, express, telephone, and telegraph companies; the equalization of property valuations between counties; the canvass of election returns; and the direction of the taking of the State census.

It will thus be seen that the members of the Executive Council are heavily burdened with duties.

**The Board of Control.** — Before 1898 nearly all the State charitable and penal institutions were managed by separate boards. But in 1898 the General Assembly passed a law placing all these institutions under the supervision of the Board of Control of State Institutions composed of three members appointed by the Governor with the consent of the Senate for a term of six years. One member retires every two years.

The following institutions are at present under the supervision of the Board of Control:

The Iowa Soldiers' Orphans' Home at Davenport.

The Iowa Soldiers' Home at Marshalltown.

The School for the Deaf at Council Bluffs.

The Institution for Feeble-minded Children at Glenwood.



- The Mt. Pleasant State Hospital for the Insane.
- The Independence State Hospital for the Insane.
- The Clarinda State Hospital for the Insane.
- The Cherokee State Hospital for the Insane.
- The State Hospital for Inebriates at Knoxville.
- The State Hospital for Female Inebriates at Mt. Pleasant.
- The Sanitorium for the Treatment of Tuberculosis at Oakdale, near Iowa City.
- The State Colony for Epileptics near Woodward.
- The Industrial School for Boys at Eldora.
- The Industrial School for Girls at Mitchellville.
- The Reformatory at Anamosa.
- The Industrial Reformatory for Females at Anamosa.
- The Penitentiary at Fort Madison.

The Board of Control makes rules for the management of all these institutions, lets contracts for the furnishing of supplies, visits the institutions, confers with the officers in charge, makes reports to the Governor and the General Assembly, keeps itself informed on the methods employed in other States and countries in managing similar institutions, and performs many other duties.

Each of the members of the Board of Control receives a salary of \$3000 a year and all necessary traveling expenses.

**The State Board of Education.** — This board, which manages the affairs of the three great educational institutions of the State, together with the College for the Blind at Vinton, is discussed in Chapter XII.

**The Board of Railroad Commissioners.** — This board is composed of three members elected by the people of the State, and their term of office is four years.



It is the duty of the Railroad Commissioners to exercise supervision over all the railroads of the State, both steam and electric, except street railways, in such matters as rates, service, equipment, safety devices, and measures to promote the safety of employees and of the public; and to prosecute companies for violations of the law. Express companies are also under the supervision of this board.

Each of the Railroad Commissioners receives a salary of \$2200 a year.

**The Commerce Counsel.** — The Board of Railroad Commissioners, with the consent of the Senate, appoints a Commerce Counsel, who holds office for four years and receives a salary of \$5000. He is the legal adviser of the Railroad Commissioners and assists them in their duties.

**The Commissioner of Insurance.** — Formerly all insurance companies doing business in the State were regulated by the State Auditor. But in 1913 the General Assembly created the office of Commissioner of Insurance. This officer is appointed by the Governor with the consent of the Senate for a term of four years at a salary of \$3000. He has supervision of insurance companies and is charged with the enforcement of the insurance laws of the State.

**The Industrial Commissioner.** — Another office created by the General Assembly in 1913 is the office of Iowa Industrial Commissioner. This officer is also appointed by the Governor, receives a salary of \$3000, and his term of office is six years. His duties are concerned chiefly with the enforcement of the employers' liability and workmen's compensation law.

**Other Executive Officers.** — In addition to the officers already named there are the following executive officers, whose duties are implied in their titles :

State Printer.

State Binder.

Custodian of Public Buildings and Property

Director of Weather and Crop Service.

Fish and Game Warden.

Dairy and Food Commissioner.

State Fire Marshal.

State Veterinary Surgeon.

Hotel Inspector.

Inspector of Bees.

State Inspector of Boats.

State Inspector of Oils.

State Mine Inspectors.

Inspector of Weights and Measures.

The first two officers in this list are elected by the General Assembly and receive pay for their services at a rate fixed by law. Most of the other officers are appointed by the Governor and receive either definite salaries or a *per diem* or fees for their services. In most cases they are aided by deputies and assistants.

**Other Administrative Boards.** — There are, also, the following administrative boards and commissions in addition to those already named :

Board of Curators of the State Historical Society of Iowa (at Iowa City).

Board of Library Trustees (of the State Library, Historical Department of Iowa, and Hall of Archives at Des Moines).

Board of Health.

Board of Parole.

Board of Educational Examiners.

Board of Dental Examiners.

Board of Law Examiners.

Board of Medical Examiners.

Board of Optometry Examiners.

Board of Examiners for Mine Inspectors.

Board of Voting Machine Commissioners.

Geological Board.

State Board of Agriculture.

Commission of Animal Health.

Bureau of Labor Statistics.

Iowa Library Commission.

State Highway Commission. (See Chapter XI.)

Commissioners of Pharmacy.

The number of members on these different boards and commissions varies from one to nineteen. In some cases the boards are *ex officio*, that is, they are made up of persons who are members by virtue of holding some office. In other cases the members are appointed, mostly by the Governor. Where there is any compensation it is a *per diem*, except in a few cases.

SUGGESTIONS. — The *Iowa Official Register* should be used for reference purposes in connection with this chapter.

Pupils should be required to make reports on the various State offices, boards, and commissions.

## QUESTIONS

1. How is the Governor chosen? What is his term of office?

2. What are the relations between the Governor and the General Assembly? What is meant by a limited veto power?

3. What officers does the Governor appoint?

4. What is the law of succession to the office of Governor?  
What is the chief function of the Lieutenant Governor?

5. What are the duties of the Secretary of State? Of the Auditor? Of the Treasurer?

6. Who are members of the Executive Council? What are the duties of the Executive Council? In what ways does the Executive Council differ from the President's Cabinet?

7. Name the institutions managed by the Board of Control? Which of these institutions are penal institutions?

8. What are the duties of the Railroad Commissioners? How are they chosen?

9. Name ten other executive officers and ten boards and commissions.



## CHAPTER VIII

### THE STATE — THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT

**The Courts.** — The purpose of the courts is to protect the people from personal wrong or injury and to make them secure in the possession of property. The courts interpret the laws passed by the legislature and apply them to individual cases. In Iowa there are four kinds of courts; namely, Justice of the Peace Courts, District Courts, Superior Courts, and the Supreme Court.

**Lawsuits.** — If a person wishes to collect a debt which he has been unable to obtain in any other way, if he desires to secure payment for injury to himself or for damage to his property, or if he wishes to protect himself or his property from some threatened wrong, he may bring a suit in the courts. Lawsuits of this character are called civil cases. Criminal cases, on the other hand, are those in which attempts are made through the courts to secure the conviction and punishment of persons accused or suspected of offenses against society, such as murder, assault and battery, larceny, robbery, arson, and the like.

The person who starts the suit or makes the complaint in a civil case is called the plaintiff; while the one against whom the suit is brought is known as the defendant. Both parties to a lawsuit usually employ

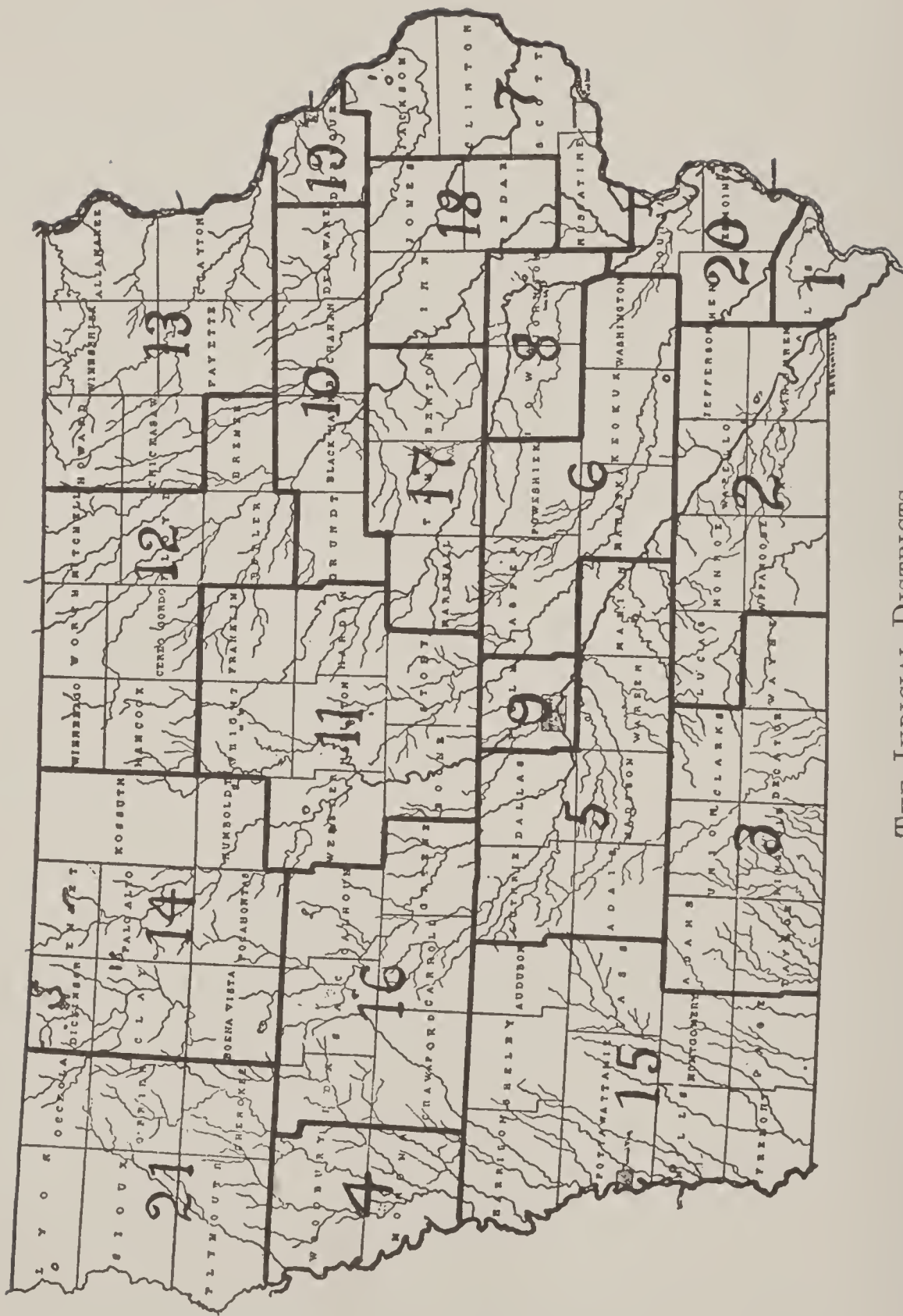
attorneys to plead their cases in the court. In criminal cases the State is always the plaintiff.

**The Justices of the Peace Courts.** — The lowest court is that conducted by the Justice of the Peace. Two justices are elected every two years by the people of each township. Justices of the Peace must reside within the township where they are elected in order that it may be easy for the people to find them at all times. At the same time they are classed as county officers and have jurisdiction over cases arising anywhere within the county in which they live. Their jurisdiction in civil cases is limited to the trial of cases where the amount in controversy does not exceed one hundred dollars; although with the consent of both parties to the suit this amount may be extended to three hundred dollars. They may also try criminal cases in which the penalty prescribed by law does not exceed a fine of one hundred dollars or imprisonment for thirty days.

Furthermore, the Justice of the Peace may hold a preliminary hearing in any criminal case. If there is evidence of guilt, the person accused of committing the offense is bound over to appear before the grand jury, being either confined in the county jail or released on bail in the meantime. In order to be released on bail, the accused person must get two or more men to sign a bond that they will pay a certain amount of money if he does not present himself for trial at the proper time.

A Justice of the Peace may also perform the marriage ceremony and may act as a coroner.

**The District Court.** — The court in which all the



THE JUDICIAL DISTRICTS



more important cases are tried is the District Court. The State is divided into twenty-one judicial districts, each district having from one to five judges according to population and amount of judicial business. The judges, of whom there are now fifty-nine altogether, are nominated and elected on a non-partisan ticket for a term of four years by the people of the district over which they preside. Each judge receives a salary of \$3500 a year.

Most of the judicial districts, as will be seen from the accompanying map, contain several counties; and the law requires that at least four sittings of the court shall be held in each county each year.

**Superior Courts.** — The Superior Courts constitute what might be called a special feature in the judicial system of Iowa. Moreover, they are not higher courts than the District Court, as the name would seem to indicate. The law merely provides that any city containing four thousand inhabitants or more may vote to establish a Superior Court, which takes the place of the mayor's court or the police court and tries all cases arising under the ordinances of the city. The Superior Court also has concurrent jurisdiction with the Justice of the Peace in all cases and with the District Court in most civil cases. Superior Courts have thus far been established only in the following seven cities: Cedar Rapids, Council Bluffs, Grinnell, Keokuk, Oelwein, Perry, and Shenandoah.

The Judge of the Superior Court is nominated and elected by the people of the city on a non-partisan ticket. His term of office is four years and he receives a salary of \$2000 or \$3000 a year, according to the population of the city.



**The Supreme Court.** — The highest court in Iowa is the Supreme Court, composed of seven justices nominated and elected on a non-partisan ticket by the people of the State for a term of six years. Two justices are chosen every two years, except in 1914, 1920, etc., when three will be elected. Each justice receives a salary of \$6000 annually. The position of Chief Justice is held in rotation for a period of one year according to the seniority either in service or in age of those whose terms of office next expire.

The Supreme Court holds three sessions each year in the capitol building at Des Moines, beginning in January, May, and September. For the purpose of handling the large number of cases which come before it the court is now divided into two divisions, the Chief Justice presiding over each division in open session.

Scarcely any lawsuits are ever begun in the Supreme Court, the chief function of which is to review cases which are appealed from the lower courts and determine whether the judge of the lower court made a correct interpretation of the law. This is what it means in the constitution when it states that the Supreme Court "shall constitute a court for the correction of errors at law."

Connected with the Supreme Court are the Clerk of the Supreme Court and the Supreme Court Reporter, both of whom are now appointed by the court itself, although previous to 1913 they were elected by the people of the State.

**Appeals.** — In case either of the parties to a suit in the Justice of the Peace Court is dissatisfied with the decision, he may appeal the case to the District Court,

except in civil cases where the amount of money involved is less than twenty-five dollars. With certain restrictions cases may likewise be appealed from the District Court to the Supreme Court of the State; and in some cases an appeal may be taken from the latter tribunal to the United States courts. The right of appeal is granted for the purpose of protecting the people from injustice and from prejudice or ignorance on the part of judges; but it is a right which is often abused.

**The County Attorney.** — The County Attorney represents the State and the county in cases arising in the District Court in his own county. The duties of this officer are more fully discussed in Chapter V.

**The Attorney-General.** — The Attorney-General, elected by the people for a term of two years, fills about the same position in the State government as the County Attorney occupies in the county. He takes charge of all criminal cases in the Supreme Court, represents the State whenever it is a party to a suit, and is the legal adviser of the General Assembly and the State officers, although they are not obliged to follow his advice.

The County Attorney and the Attorney-General are both very important officers, for upon them depends much of the success of the enforcement of the laws and the bringing of criminals to justice. They may bring suit to remove certain officers who have failed to perform their duties and may begin proceedings in criminal cases.

SUGGESTIONS. — Pupils should attend a trial in the Justice of the Peace Court and observe the procedure.

Blanks, such as warrants, subpoenas, and the like, should be secured and used for purposes of illustration.

A comparison should be made of the systems of judicial procedure in England and in the United States.

There should be a discussion of the recall of judges and the recall of judicial decisions.

### QUESTIONS

1. What kinds of courts are there in Iowa? What is the purpose of the courts?

2. What is a lawsuit? What is a civil case? A criminal case?

3. What is the jurisdiction of the Justice of the Peace?

4. What is meant by bail?

5. How many judicial districts are there in Iowa? How many district judges? Where is the District Court held?

6. What are Superior Courts?

7. Of how many Justices is the Supreme Court composed? How are they chosen? What are the special functions of the Supreme Court?

8. What is meant by an appeal?

9. What are the duties of the Attorney-General?

## CHAPTER IX

### ELECTIONS

**The Right to Vote.** — In the United States all government rests on the will of the people; that is, the governments, from the township up to the nation, are administered by representatives chosen by the people. By the suffrage or the right to vote is meant the right to choose these representatives or officers. Strictly speaking, voting is not a right which belongs to all the people (like, for instance, the right to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness), but it is a privilege which is granted by the constitution of the State to a certain class of the citizens. It will be seen, therefore, that citizenship and the suffrage do not mean the same thing, since only a part of the citizens are allowed to vote.

**Voters.** — The constitution of Iowa provides that “every male citizen of the United States, of the age of twenty-one years, who shall have been a resident of this state six months next preceding the election, and of the county in which he claims his vote, sixty days, shall be entitled to vote at all elections.” The suffrage is denied, however, to idiots and insane persons, and to persons convicted of any infamous crime.

It has already been noticed that women are permitted to vote on questions of raising the tax levies or issuing bonds for municipal and school purposes.



But an amendment to the constitution giving women the right to vote at all elections has passed one General Assembly and is now (1914) awaiting further action of the legislature in 1915.

**The Registration of Voters.** — In order to prevent fraud and illegal voting, the law requires that all voters in cities of a population of 3500 or over must be registered prior to the general election, or they will not be allowed to vote. The Council appoints two registration officials for each election precinct, one from each of the two leading political parties. These officials meet at the usual places of holding elections on the second Thursday prior to the general election, and continue in session two days (except in years of presidential elections, when they meet for three days) from eight o'clock in the morning until nine o'clock at night.

The voters present themselves to the registration officials and under oath state their names, ages, places of residence, places of birth, dates of naturalization if foreign-born, and various other facts — all of which are recorded by the officials in a registry book. In this way it is possible to know who has a right to vote and who has not.

If, on account of absence from the city or for some other reason, a legal voter fails to register on the regular registration days, he may be allowed to register on the day of the election.

Registration is required only every four years — the years of presidential elections — unless the voter removes to a new election precinct.

**The Time of holding Elections.** — In the early history of Iowa as many as three or four elections were

held every year, part of the officers being elected at one time and part at another. But now all elective State, district, county, and township officers are elected at the general election held every two years on the Tuesday following the first Monday in November. City and town officers, however, are elected biennially on the last Monday in March; and school elections are held annually on the second Monday in March.

**The Places of holding Elections.** — In order that people may not be obliged to go long distances to vote, election precincts have been established, varying in area to suit the convenience of the voters. In each precinct there is a polling place where the votes are cast; and at each polling place there may be found a booth or booths into which the voters go and cast their ballots in secrecy. The polls must be open to voters in cities of a population of 3500 or over from seven o'clock in the morning to seven in the evening; while in all other places the hours are from eight in the morning to seven in the evening.

**The Ballots.** — The choice of the voter is expressed by means of a ballot or sheet of paper on which he indicates the candidates for whom he votes. At one time each political party printed its own ballots or tickets. But in 1892 the Australian ballot system was adopted in Iowa, so that now the ballots are officially printed and contain the names of all the candidates of all the political parties. At the head of the ballot are the names of the political parties and in columns underneath the names of the parties are the names of the candidates of each of the parties for the various offices.

In many places voting machines are used and in

such cases there are no printed ballots. The voting machine is an ingenious device operating in some respects like the cash register. The voter indicates his choice by moving a number of small levers. The machine not only records each person's vote, but it also automatically counts the votes cast for each of the candidates. Its use is especially beneficial in precincts where there is a large number of voters, since it takes less time to vote on the machine than it usually does to mark, fold, and deposit the ballot.

**The Method of conducting Elections.** — On election day the voters go to the polling place to vote. Across the room in which the voting takes place there is a railing, with a gate for the entrance and exit of voters. The election officials, consisting of three judges and two clerks, are seated at tables behind the railing and there is a gatekeeper standing at the gate. When the voter approaches the gate he announces his name, and if his name appears on the registry list and if there is no reason why he should not vote, he is allowed to enter. He then receives from one of the election judges an official ballot (except where voting machines are used) which he takes with him into one of the booths which are behind the railing, only one person being permitted to enter a booth at a time. There the voter marks the ballot, or, in other words, votes, and after folding the ballot so that the initials of the election judge appear on the outside, he leaves the booth, and hands the ballot to the judge, who deposits it in the ballot box. This completes the process of voting and the voter immediately goes out from behind the railing.

Where voting machines are used the process is the



same, except that no printed ballots are used. The voter receives permission to enter the booth, and when he has voted he may at once pass from the room.

**Challenging.** — Any person offering to vote on election day may be challenged if any voter or election judge has reason to believe such a person is not qualified to vote. In case of a challenge the person must take an oath that he has a right to vote. Challengers are usually chosen by each of the political parties to be at the polls on election day and challenge the qualifications of persons whom they think should not be allowed to vote. Challenges, however, are not frequent in most precincts.

**Canvassing the Votes.** — After the polls have been closed the election judges immediately begin to count the votes cast for each candidate. Where voting machines are used the result is known as soon as the last vote is cast, since the machine automatically counts the votes. But where ballots are used the counting is usually quite a long task.

When the votes have been counted the judges declare the election of those candidates who have received the highest number of votes for offices in that particular precinct. The results or returns of the votes for all other officers are sent from each precinct to the proper city, township, county, or State authorities. The returns from city precincts are canvassed by the Mayor and City Clerk, unless the Mayor was himself a candidate at the election, in which case a Justice of the Peace is chosen to act in his place. Returns for township officers are canvassed by the Trustees and the Township Clerk; for county officers by the



Board of Supervisors; and for Representatives in Congress, presidential electors, and all State officers except Governor and Lieutenant Governor by the Executive Council. The constitution provides that the returns for Governor and Lieutenant Governor shall be canvassed by the General Assembly.

**The Nomination of Candidates.** — Scarcely less important than the election of officers is the nomination of the candidates who are to be voted upon. Until recent years all candidates in Iowa were nominated by the caucus or convention. The voters of each political party in each township, town, or ward of a city held a meeting at a certain time, nominated candidates for local offices, and chose delegates to the county convention. At the county convention candidates for county offices were nominated and delegates chosen to the State convention. In a similar way the State convention of each party nominated candidates for State offices and chose delegates to the national convention.

But the convention system had defects. In the first place, only a few people were sufficiently interested to attend the caucuses; and in the second place, people began to feel that the caucuses and conventions were easily managed by politicians and bosses to promote their own selfish interests.

**Primary Elections.** — For the purposes of correcting the abuses which had arisen under the convention system and to enable the people to take a more direct part in the nomination of officers the primary election law was passed in 1907. Therefore, candidates for nearly all State, county, and township offices are now

nominated by the voters of each party at primary elections instead of in caucuses or conventions.

If a person wishes to become a candidate for nomination for any office, he must file with the proper officials a nomination paper signed by a certain per cent of the voters of the political party to which he belongs. His name is then printed on the official primary election ballot.

Primary elections are held every two years on the first Monday in June and are conducted in much the same manner as regular elections. When the voter presents himself at the polling place he states the political party to which he belongs and a ballot of that party is given to him. He then enters one of the booths and marks the ballot just as at regular elections.

The persons receiving the largest number of votes at the primary election usually become the candidates of their respective parties at the following regular election. In case there are several candidates for nomination for the same office on the same party ticket and no one receives as high as thirty-five per cent of the total number of votes cast by that party, then it is declared that no nomination has been made, and the party must nominate its candidate for that office at a convention which is provided for by law.

**Corrupt Practices.** — In Iowa, as in other States, the law prohibits “corrupt practices” in political campaigns and at elections, such as illegal voting and bribery, treating, or employing undue influence to secure votes. Betting on election results is also forbidden, and candidates are required to file sworn statements of campaign contributions and expenditures. The

purpose of these laws is to prevent any actions which will hinder the voter in expressing his unbiased judgment at elections.

**Political Parties.** — Political parties are made up of groups of people who hold similar views on governmental policies; they are the means through which people express their ideas of how the government should be run. Each of the parties draws up a platform, nominates candidates for office, and conducts a political campaign previous to the elections. Each party is thoroughly organized with committees in every township, town, city, and county, as well as in the State and Nation. These committees distribute literature, arrange for meetings, provide speakers, and, in general, look after the interests of their parties in the political campaigns.

Political parties are not established by law; they are voluntary organizations, but they are practically permanent and are an essential feature of government in the United States.

**SUGGESTIONS.** — Instruction ballots should be secured from election officials and used in teaching the method of marking ballots.

Mock elections should be held by the pupils in order to secure practice in the method of voting. For instance, they might choose their class officers in this manner.

Pupils should endeavor to learn all they can about the candidates at elections and find out the things for which each political party stands.

An investigation might be made to see to what extent the voters in your township, town, or city take part in elections, and especially in primary elections.

The merits of the short ballot movement should be studied.

## QUESTIONS

1. What is meant by the suffrage? Are all citizens allowed to vote?
2. Who are voters in Iowa? On what questions may women vote?
3. What is the process of the registration of voters?
4. When are elections held in Iowa?
5. Describe the process of voting.
6. What is meant by the challenging of voters?
7. How are the votes canvassed?
8. How are candidates nominated? When are primary elections held?
9. What are corrupt practices?
10. What is the function of political parties?



## CHAPTER X

### TAXATION

**Reasons for Taxation.** — If we are to have governments, State and local, to carry on the business of the public and to protect and promote the interests of the people, there must be money with which to pay the salaries of officers and to defray other expenses of running the government. This money is raised by means of taxation. Each citizen contributes according to the value of his property toward the maintenance of the government, which in turn protects his life, liberty, and property.

**Kinds of Taxes.** — The general property tax, which is a tax of a certain per cent levied on real and personal property, is the chief source of public revenue in Iowa. But there are several special taxes from which a considerable amount of money is derived, as, for instance, the poll tax, the inheritance tax, corporation taxes, road taxes, motor vehicle taxes, and the dog tax.

**The Levy of Taxes.** — The first thing to be determined in the process of taxation is how much money must be raised for the support of the State and local governments. This is known as the levy of taxes. The levy for State purposes is made by the General Assembly, for county purposes by the Board of Supervisors, for the township by the Trustees, and for the use of the city or town by the Council.

**The Assessment of Property.** — Since the people pay taxes in proportion to the property they own, it is necessary to make a list of all their property and assess it, or, in other words, place a valuation on it. This, as has been seen, is the duty of the Assessor, who goes around once every year listing all the property and placing a valuation on it. While property is supposed to be listed at its full cash value, it is only assessed at one-fourth that amount.

**Equalization.** — After property has been assessed it is very often found that there are inequalities in assessments. For instance, one piece of land may be assessed at fifty dollars an acre, while another piece equally good and lying just across the road may be assessed at only thirty dollars an acre. Again, the average assessed value of cattle in one township or county may be five or six dollars per head, while in another township or county it may be eight or ten dollars. This state of affairs shows that something must be wrong, and people often complain that they have not been treated fairly.

The process of making assessments more uniform is termed equalization, and it is performed by boards of review who are required to go over the assessment lists and correct inequalities when they find them. The Council acts as the board of review for the city or town, the Trustees for the township, the Board of Supervisors for the county, and the Executive Council for the State.

**The Tax Rate.** — When the amount of money to be raised by taxation has been determined, and the assessment and equalization have been completed, it still remains to be decided how much each taxpayer must

pay. In other words the rate of taxation must be determined. This is done by dividing the total amount of taxes to be raised for all purposes (State and local) in a particular county, for instance, by the total assessed valuation of the property in that county. The result is a percentage which is usually stated as so many mills on the dollar, and every property owner is obliged to pay taxes equal in amount to this percentage of the assessed value of his property.

**The Collection of Taxes.** — All general property taxes, both State and local, are collected by the County Treasurer and disposed of in accordance with the law. Taxes may be paid in two installments each year, one half between the first Monday in January and the first day of March and the other half before the first day of the following September. Taxes not paid within one month after they are due are declared to be delinquent and one per cent each month until paid is added as a penalty. Furthermore, the property of persons whose taxes are not paid before the first Monday in December is sold at public auction and as much of the proceeds as is necessary is applied to the payment of the taxes; although property thus sold may afterwards be redeemed.

Special provisions are made for the collection of the other kinds of taxes.

**Exemptions.** — Certain property is exempted from taxation. In this list is all government property, such as arsenals, post offices, and other property belonging to the federal government; State property, including all the lands and buildings owned by the State; and courthouses, city halls, libraries, school

buildings and grounds, and other property of the county, city, and school corporation. The property owned and used by agricultural, benevolent, scientific, educational, and religious societies is also in this class; as are also certain kinds and amounts of personal property. Exemptions from taxation are sometimes granted for the purpose of encouraging the growth of certain industries. Altogether there is a surprisingly large amount of property against which no taxes are assessed.

SUGGESTIONS. — Copies of the revenue laws of Iowa should be secured from the Secretary of State and used in connection with this chapter.

Old tax receipts should be secured and used for purposes of illustration.

The rates of taxation for various purposes should be learned and discussed, as should also the special kinds of taxation.

Pupils should watch the newspapers for articles or editorials on the subject of taxation.

### QUESTIONS

1. What are the reasons for taxation?
2. What is the general property tax? What other kinds of taxes are there?
3. What is meant by the levy of taxes? How is the levy made?
4. What is meant by the assessment of property? At what valuation is property assessed?
5. What is the correction of inequalities in assessments called?
6. What is the tax rate? How is it determined?
7. By whom are taxes collected? When must taxes be paid? What happens if taxes are not paid when due?
8. What property is exempt from taxation?



## CHAPTER XI

### ROADS

**Early Roads.** — When the first settlers came to the Iowa country the only roads were Indian trails and the paths made by herds of buffaloes. And so the settlers traveled across the country as best they could for several years. But as the settlements became numerous, definite roads were badly needed. Consequently a large number of roads were established and laid out by the territorial government, and many of these roads are still in use in the eastern part of the State. They do not run on section lines, but follow the ridges and highlands as much as possible, and thus, as a rule, they are in better condition than the average country roads, especially during the rainy seasons.

**Establishment and Care of Roads.** — Roads are established and constructed and bridges are built by the Board of Supervisors in each county. They also have general charge of the repair and improvement of certain roads which constitute what is known as the county road system. The law requires that the Supervisors shall appoint a competent County Engineer who shall act under their direction in overseeing the county road and bridge work.

All roads not cared for by the Supervisors are under the direction of the Township Trustees and form what is called the township road system. Formerly the

township was divided into road districts, each with a road superintendent. But in 1913 a law was passed which declared that the township should constitute one road district and that the Trustees should appoint a superintendent to have charge of the road work of the entire township.

The streets in cities and towns are laid out, improved, and cared for under the direction of a street commissioner appointed by the mayor.

**Road Taxes.** — The expense of building and repairing roads is defrayed by means of taxes levied by the proper authorities in the county, township, town, or city. These taxes may be paid in part by work on the roads if the Township Trustees so determine. Furthermore, every able-bodied man between the ages of twenty-one and forty-five is required to labor on the highways for two days each year or pay a certain sum of money in place of such labor.

**The State Highway Commission.** — The State Highway Commission, located at Ames, consists of three members — the Dean of Engineering at the Iowa State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts and two persons appointed by the Governor. It is the duty of the Commission to adopt and furnish standard plans for highway construction, to distribute information to county officials relative to the improvement of roads, and in general to exercise supervision over local officers in the performance of all duties connected with roads and bridges. One-eighth of the money derived from the motor vehicle taxes is set aside for the support of the Commission.

SUGGESTIONS. — A copy of the road laws of the State should be secured and studied. Especial attention might be given to the laws regulating the use of motor vehicles on the highways.

Discuss the best methods and materials to be employed in the construction of permanent highways.

Valuable information may be obtained by writing to the State Highway Commission, Ames, Iowa.

### QUESTIONS

1. Why are the old territorial roads often better than those later established?

2. How are roads established and cared for? By whom is the County Engineer appointed?

3. How are road expenses paid?

4. What are the functions of the State Highway Commission?

## CHAPTER XII

### THE STATE EDUCATIONAL SYSTEM

**The System of Schools.** — The public schools of Iowa are so organized that it is possible for a boy or girl to enter the kindergarten and proceed step by step until he or she has received the highest degree granted by the State University. (Local school affairs are discussed in Chapter II.)

**School Funds.** — The money used for the support of the public schools of the State is derived from two sources: from certain funds and from taxation. There are two funds; namely, the permanent school fund and the temporary school fund.

During the early history of Iowa a large amount of land was given to the State by Congress to be used for school purposes. This land, which consisted of one section in each congressional township in addition to a grant of five hundred thousand acres and several other grants, has been sold by the State and the proceeds set aside as a permanent school fund. The proceeds of the sale of property which reverts to the State because the owner died without heirs and without making a will, also belong in this fund. This money is loaned and only the interest is used for school purposes. Thus the permanent school fund will never be any smaller. It is unfortunate that a large part of the school lands could not have been held until the



present time, for most of them were sold for not more than one hundredth part of the average price per acre which Iowa land brings to-day.

The temporary school fund consists of "all forfeitures which are authorized to be made for the benefit of the school fund, the proceeds of all fines collected for violation of the penal laws, for the non-performance of military duty, and the proceeds of the sale of lost goods and estrays."

The proceeds of both these funds are distributed among the various school townships and independent districts in proportion to the number of persons between five and twenty-one years of age in each school corporation.

**School Taxes.** — The money derived from the funds above mentioned is by no means sufficient to pay the expenses of maintaining the schools, and so school taxes are levied. The school board estimates and votes upon the amount of taxes needed to pay contingent expenses and the salaries of teachers. But with certain exceptions the amount paid each year in each school corporation for contingent expenses must not exceed five dollars for each person of school age; while the sum paid for the salaries of teachers must not exceed fifteen dollars for each person of school age. Taxes for the building of schoolhouses may be voted by the people at the annual school election. The school board may also vote taxes for the purchase of textbooks and for the transportation of children to and from school.

The taxes voted for school purposes are levied by the Board of Supervisors of each county and are paid with the other taxes.

**Teachers' Certificates.** — The law provides that no one shall be permitted to teach in the public schools without a license or certificate stating that he or she is qualified to teach. There are two general classes of teachers' licenses or certificates; namely, uniform county certificates, consisting of first, second, and third class certificates issued for three, two, and one years, respectively, and renewable; and State certificates, general and special, issued for five years and renewable, together with State diplomas or life certificates as they are sometimes called. Provisional county certificates may also be issued for one year in special cases.

Certificates of all kinds are granted by the State Board of Educational Examiners to those who are successful in passing the teachers' examinations, and to college graduates who have fulfilled certain requirements.

Examinations for uniform county certificates are held each year under the direction of the County Superintendents during the last week in January, June, July, and October. The questions are prepared by the State Superintendent as chairman of the State Board of Educational Examiners, and the papers are read and graded under the direction of that Board. For State certificates and State diplomas the Board holds several examinations each year at stated times.

**County Institutes.** — The County Superintendents are required to hold county teachers' institutes each year during the time when the schools are in session. The teachers, except in cities where twenty-five or more teachers are employed, are required to attend these institutes for at least two days. Furthermore,

the County Superintendent may, if he chooses, conduct a summer school lasting from four to six weeks, for the purpose of giving instruction to teachers, and those desiring to teach.

**Normal Training in High Schools.** — Normal training courses are offered in certain high schools of the State for the “purpose of increasing the facilities for training teachers for the rural schools, by requiring a review of such common branches as may be deemed essential by the superintendent of public instruction, and for instruction in elementary pedagogy and the art of teaching elementary agriculture and home economics.” A certificate of graduation from a normal training course entitles the holder to teach in the rural schools for two years without any further certificate.

State aid to the extent of \$750 a year is given to high schools offering normal training courses.

**The County Superintendent.** — The powers and duties of this officer have already been discussed under other headings and also in Chapter V.

**The Superintendent of Public Instruction.** — The officer who exercises general supervision over the public schools of the State is the Superintendent of Public Instruction, or, as he is usually called, the State Superintendent. He is appointed by the Governor, with the consent of the Senate, for a term of four years, and receives a salary of \$4000.

It is the duty of the State Superintendent to direct the inspection of the schools and suggest changes and improvements; to promote a proper interest in education and especially in vocational training; to classify the schools of the State; to prescribe the forms in which

school officers and teachers shall make the reports which are required by law ; to render opinions in cases of dispute ; to make biennial reports to the Governor giving a great variety of information relative to the condition of the public schools ; and to perform other duties connected with the management of the schools.

**The State Board of Educational Examiners.**— This board is composed of the Superintendent of Public Instruction, the presidents of the State University and the State Teachers' College, and two other persons, one of whom is a woman, appointed by the Governor for a term of four years. As has been seen, this board has general charge of the examinations for teachers' certificates.

**The State Board of Education.** — The management of the State University, the State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts, and the State Teachers' College is vested in the State Board of Education. This board, which was created by the General Assembly in 1909, is composed of nine members appointed by the Governor with the consent of the Senate. Their term of office is six years, three members retiring every two years ; and they receive seven dollars a day while in the performance of their duties, which occupy only a part of their time.

Not more than five of the members of the board may belong to the same political party nor may there be more than one alumnus of each of the three educational institutions on the board.

The Board of Education chooses the presidents and members of the faculties of the institutions under its charge and fixes their compensations ; makes rules and





STATE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA

One of the thirty buildings

regulations for the management of the institutions; and has charge of the expenditure of all money appropriated for the three schools by the General Assembly.

This sum of money is so large and its proper expenditure requires such constant attention that the board appoints a Finance Committee composed of three members, who serve for three years at a yearly salary of \$3500, and devote all their time to the work.

The College for the Blind at Vinton is also under the control and management of the State Board of Education.

**The State University.** — The highest unit in the public school system of Iowa is the State University of Iowa, located at Iowa City. Its courses are so arranged that they form a direct continuation of the work of the accredited high schools of the State. It consists of colleges of liberal arts (including a summer



STATE COLLEGE OF AGRICULTURE  
Central Building

session and a summer school for library training), law, medicine, homeopathic medicine, dentistry, pharmacy, applied science, fine arts, education, and a graduate college, besides a nurses' training school. Thus, preparation for almost any profession may be secured at the State University.

Through the Extension Division, with its several departments, the University is able to minister to the needs of the people in all parts of the State.

**The Agricultural College.** — The Iowa State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts at Ames offers regular courses in agriculture, engineering, veterinary medicine, and science, besides non-collegiate courses in agriculture, a summer school, and winter short courses. Through the Extension Department lectures and demonstrations on agricultural topics are given throughout the State, home study in improved methods of



ADMINISTRATION BUILDING OF THE STATE TEACHERS' COLLEGE

agriculture is promoted, and information of all kinds is distributed. An agricultural experiment station, an engineering experiment station, and the State Highway Commission are also located at Ames in connection with the State College.

**The Iowa State Teachers' College.** — This college, which was formerly called the Iowa State Normal School, devotes itself chiefly to the training of teachers for the rural schools and the grades. There are, however, special courses for the training of kindergarten and primary teachers, and teachers in such branches as music, manual training, physical training, home economics, and commerce; besides courses for the preparation of high school teachers, superintendents, and principals. A summer school is conducted at which



special attention is given to the needs of persons desirous of reviewing the branches covered in the examinations for uniform county certificates.

**The State Historical Society of Iowa.** — This State institution, located at Iowa City, devotes itself to collecting, preserving, and recording the history of Iowa. It has the largest historical library in the State; and every year it publishes three or four large volumes dealing with various subjects in Iowa history. From the standpoint of research and publication the State Historical Society of Iowa is the foremost State institution of its kind in the United States.

**Other Educational Agencies.** — In addition to the public schools and the higher State educational institutions there are many private and denominational academies and colleges, parochial schools, and commercial or business colleges. Furthermore, while not usually classified as such, the State Library (including the Historical Department of Iowa and the State Law Library) at Des Moines, the State Fair, and many of the State charitable and penal institutions might be spoken of as educational in some of their aspects.

**SUGGESTIONS.** — Several copies of the school laws of the State should be in every school library.

Catalogues of the State educational institutions for the current year should be in every school library.

## QUESTIONS

1. How are schools supported?
2. What constitutes the permanent school fund?
3. What constitutes the temporary school fund?



4. How are school taxes voted and levied?
5. What are the different kinds of teachers' certificates?  
Who grants teachers' certificates? By whom are examinations for teachers' certificates conducted?
6. What provisions are made for the training of teachers?
7. How is the Superintendent of Public Instruction chosen? What is his term of office? What are his duties?
8. What is the State Board of Educational Examiners?
9. How many members are there on the State Board of Education? How are they chosen? What are the duties of the Board? What is the Finance Committee?
10. What are the special features of the three State educational institutions?

## CHAPTER XIII

### THE MILITARY FORCE OF THE STATE

**The Militia.** — The militia or military force of Iowa consists of all able-bodied male citizens, and men of foreign birth who have declared their intention of becoming citizens, who are between the ages of eighteen and forty-five years, except honorably discharged soldiers, sailors, and mariners of the United States. The constitution also declares that no person who has conscientious scruples against bearing arms shall be compelled to perform military duty in time of peace.

Lists of the persons liable to military duty are made each year by the Assessors and copies are filed in the office of the Adjutant General.

**The Iowa National Guard.** — The part of the military force of the State which is organized is known as the Iowa National Guard and is made up of volunteers from among those subject to military duty, the term of enlistment being three years. The Iowa National Guard is at present composed of four regiments of twelve companies each, organized, armed, equipped, and disciplined in accordance with the laws of Congress and the regulations of the War Department.

The members of the National Guard spend only a small part of their time in military service. They drill regularly by companies and once each year all the regiments hold encampments, either separately or all to-



IOWA SOLDIERS' AND SAILORS' MONUMENT AT DES MOINES

gether, for the purposes of conducting regimental drills and army maneuvers such as would be carried on in time of war.

In cases of disturbances, riots, or insurrections which the sheriffs or the police officers are unable to quell, the Governor may call out as many companies of the National Guard as are necessary to preserve order and protect life and property.

The National Guard may also be called out by the President through the Governor in case of war or rebellion against the United States. Thus, while the standing army in this country is small, the National Guard of all the States forms a reserve force of drilled soldiers which may be called upon.

The Governor is the commander in chief of the National Guard. He appoints a military staff consisting of an Adjutant General, an Assistant Adjutant General, and twelve Aids.

### QUESTIONS

1. Of whom is the militia of Iowa composed?
2. Of whom is the Iowa National Guard composed?
3. When and by whom may the National Guard be called out?



## CONSTITUTION OF IOWA

PREAMBLE.

ARTICLE I. BILL OF RIGHTS.

ARTICLE II. RIGHT OF SUFFRAGE.

ARTICLE III. OF THE DISTRIBUTION OF POWERS.  
LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

ARTICLE IV. EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

ARTICLE V. JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

ARTICLE VI. MILITIA.

ARTICLE VII. STATE DEBTS.

ARTICLE VIII. CORPORATIONS.

ARTICLE IX. EDUCATION AND SCHOOL LANDS.

ARTICLE X. AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

ARTICLE XI. MISCELLANEOUS.

ARTICLE XII. SCHEDULE.

### PREAMBLE

We, the People of the State of Iowa, grateful to the Supreme Being for the blessings hitherto enjoyed, and feeling our dependence on Him for a continuation of those blessings, do ordain and establish a free and independent government, by the name of the State of Iowa, the boundaries whereof shall be as follows:

**Boundaries.** Beginning in the middle of the main channel of the Mississippi river, at a point due east of the middle of the mouth of the main channel of the Des Moines river; thence up the middle of the main channel of the said Des Moines river, to a point on said river where the northern boundary line of the state of Missouri — as established by the constitution of that state, adopted June 12, 1820 — crosses the said middle of the main channel of the said Des Moines river; thence westwardly along the said northern boundary line of the state of Missouri, as established at the time aforesaid, until an extension of said line intersects the middle of the main channel of the Missouri river; thence up the middle of the

main channel of the said Missouri river to a point opposite the middle of the main channel of the Big Sioux river, according to Nicollet's map; thence up the main channel of the said Big Sioux river, according to the said map, until it is intersected by the parallel of forty-three degrees and thirty minutes north latitude; thence east along said parallel of forty-three degrees and thirty minutes, until said parallel intersects the middle of the main channel of the Mississippi river; thence down the middle of the main channel of the said Mississippi river to the place of beginning.

## ARTICLE I

### BILL OF RIGHTS

**Rights of persons.** Section 1. All men are, by nature, free and equal, and have certain inalienable rights, among which are those of enjoying and defending life and liberty, acquiring, possessing, and protecting property, and pursuing and obtaining safety and happiness.

**Political power.** Sec. 2. All political power is inherent in the people. Government is instituted for the protection, security, and benefit of the people, and they have the right, at all times, to alter or reform the same, whenever the public good may require it.

**Religion.** Sec. 3. The general assembly shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; nor shall any person be compelled to attend any place of worship, pay tithes, taxes, or other rates, for building or repairing places of worship, or the maintenance of any minister or ministry.

**Religious test.** Sec. 4. No religious test shall be required as a qualification for any office of public trust, and no person shall be deprived of any of his rights, privileges, or capacities, or disqualified from the performance of any of his public or private duties, or rendered incompetent to give evidence in any court of law or equity, in consequence of his opinions on the subject of religion; and any party to any judicial proceeding shall have the right to use as a witness, or take the testimony of, any other person, not disqualified on account of interest, who may be cognizant of any fact material to the case; and parties to suits may be witnesses, as provided by law.

**Dueling.** Sec. 5. Any citizen of this state who may hereafter

be engaged, either directly or indirectly, in a duel, either as principal or accessory before the fact, shall forever be disqualified from holding any office under the constitution and laws of this state.

**Laws uniform.** Sec. 6. All laws of a general nature shall have a uniform operation; the general assembly shall not grant to any citizen or class of citizens, privileges or immunities, which upon the same terms shall not equally belong to all citizens.

**Liberty of speech and the press.** Sec. 7. Every person may speak, write, and publish his sentiments on all subjects, being responsible for the abuse of that right. No law shall be passed to restrain or abridge the liberty of speech, or of the press. In all prosecutions or indictments for libel, the truth may be given in evidence to the jury, and if it appear to the jury that the matter charged as libelous was true, and was published with good motives and for justifiable ends, the party shall be acquitted.

**Personal security.** Sec. 8. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable seizures and searches, shall not be violated; and no warrant shall issue but on probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons and things to be seized.

**Trial by jury; due process of law.** Sec. 9. The right of trial by jury shall remain inviolate; but the general assembly may authorize trial by a jury of a less number than twelve men in inferior courts; but no person shall be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law.

**Rights of persons accused.** Sec. 10. In all criminal prosecutions, and in cases involving the life or liberty of an individual, the accused shall have a right to a speedy and public trial by an impartial jury; to be informed of the accusation against him; to have a copy of the same when demanded; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for his witnesses; and to have the assistance of counsel.

**When indictment necessary.** Sec. 11. All offenses less than felony, and in which the punishment does not exceed a fine of one hundred dollars, or imprisonment for thirty days, shall be tried summarily before a justice of the peace, or other officer authorized by law, on information under oath, without indictment, or the intervention of a grand jury, saving to the defendant the right of appeal; and no person shall be held to answer for any higher criminal offense, unless on presentment or indictment by a grand jury,



except in cases arising in the army or navy, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war or public danger.

**Twice tried; bail.** Sec. 12. No person shall, after acquittal, be tried for the same offense. All persons shall, before conviction, be bailable by sufficient sureties, except for capital offenses, where the proof is evident, or the presumption great.

**Habeas corpus.** Sec. 13. The writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended or refused when application is made as required by law, unless, in case of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

**Military.** Sec. 14. The military shall be subordinate to the civil power. No standing army shall be kept up by the state in time of peace; and in time of war no appropriation for a standing army shall be for a longer time than two years.

**Quartering soldiers.** Sec. 15. No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war except in the manner prescribed by law.

**Treason.** Sec. 16. Treason against the state shall consist only in levying war against it, adhering to its enemies, or giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the evidence of two witnesses to the same overt act, or confession in open court.

**Bail; punishments.** Sec. 17. Excessive bail shall not be required; excessive fines shall not be imposed, and cruel and unusual punishment shall not be inflicted.

**Eminent domain.** Sec. 18. Private property shall not be taken for public use without just compensation first being made, or secured to be made, to the owner thereof, as soon as the damages shall be assessed by a jury, who shall not take into consideration any advantages that may result to said owner on account of the improvement for which it is taken.

The general assembly, however, may pass laws permitting the owners of lands to construct drains, ditches, and levees for agricultural, sanitary or mining purposes across the lands of others, and provide for the organization of drainage districts, vest the proper authorities with power to construct and maintain levees, drains, and ditches and to keep in repair all drains, ditches, and levees heretofore constructed under the laws of the state, by special assessments upon the property benefited thereby. The general assembly may provide by law for the condemnation of such real estate as shall be necessary for the construction and maintenance of such



drains, ditches, and levees, and prescribe the method of making such condemnation.

[By proper action of the legislature (31 G. A., joint resolution No. 1, and 32 G. A., joint resolution No. 2) the foregoing paragraph was submitted to vote of the electors at the general election of 1908, and was by them adopted.]

**Imprisonment for debt.** Sec. 19. No persons shall be imprisoned for debt in any civil action, on mesne or final process, unless in case of fraud; and no person shall be imprisoned for a military fine in time of peace.

**Petition.** Sec. 20. The people have the right freely to assemble together to counsel for the common good; to make known their opinions to their representatives, and to petition for a redress of grievances.

**Attainder; ex post facto law; obligation of contract.** Sec. 21. No bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, shall ever be passed.

**Resident aliens.** Sec. 22. Foreigners who are, or may hereafter become residents of this state, shall enjoy the same rights in respect to the possession, enjoyment, and descent of property, as native-born citizens.

**Slavery.** Sec. 23. There shall be no slavery in this state; nor shall there be involuntary servitude, unless for the punishment of crime.

**Reservation of rents.** Sec. 24. No lease or grant of agricultural lands, reserving any rent or service of any kind, shall be valid for a longer period than twenty years.

**Rights retained.** Sec. 25. This enumeration of rights shall not be construed to impair or deny others, retained by the people.

**Intoxicating liquors.** Sec. 26. No person shall manufacture for sale, or sell, or keep for sale, as a beverage any intoxicating liquors whatever, including ale, wine, and beer. The general assembly shall by law prescribe regulations for the enforcement of the prohibition herein contained, and shall thereby provide suitable penalties for the violation of the provisions hereof.

[The foregoing amendment was adopted at a special election held on June 27, 1882. The supreme court, April 21, 1883, in the case of *Koehler and Lange v. Hill*, and reported in 60th Iowa, page 543, held that owing to certain irregularities the same was not legally submitted to the electors, and did not become a part of the constitution.]

## ARTICLE II

## RIGHT OF SUFFRAGE

**Electors.** Section 1. Every male citizen of the United States, of the age of twenty-one years, who shall have been a resident of this state six months next preceding the election, and of the county in which he claims his vote, sixty days, shall be entitled to vote at all elections which are now or hereafter may be authorized by law.

[By proper legislative action (11 G. A., chap. 98, and 12 G. A., joint res. No. XI) a proposed amendment striking the word "white" from this section, as it originally stood, was submitted to the electors at the general election in 1868 and adopted.]

**Privileged from arrest.** Sec. 2. Electors shall, in all cases except treason, felony, or breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest on the days of election, during their attendance at such elections, going to and returning therefrom.

**From military duty.** Sec. 3. No elector shall be obliged to perform military duty on the day of election, except in time of war or public danger.

**Persons in military service.** Sec. 4. No person in the military, naval, or marine service of the United States shall be considered a resident of this state by being stationed in any garrison, barrack, or military or naval place or station within this state.

**Insane.** Sec. 5. No idiot or insane person, or person convicted of any infamous crime, shall be entitled to the privilege of an elector.

**Ballot.** Sec. 6. All elections by the people shall be by ballot.

**General election.** Sec. 7. The general election for state, district, county, and township officers shall be held on the Tuesday next after the first Monday in November.

[By proper action of the legislature (19 G. A., joint res. No. 12, and 20 G. A., joint res. No. 13) the foregoing section was submitted to vote of the electors at the general election in 1884, and by them adopted.]

## ARTICLE III

## OF THE DISTRIBUTION OF POWERS

**Departments of government.** Section 1. The powers of the government of Iowa shall be divided into three separate departments: the legislative, the executive, and the judicial; and no

person charged with the exercise of powers properly belonging to one of these departments shall exercise any function appertaining to either of the others, except in cases hereinafter expressly directed or permitted.

#### LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT

**General assembly.** Section 1. The legislative authority of this state shall be vested in a general assembly, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives; and the style of every law shall be — “ Be it enacted by the General Assembly of the State of Iowa.”

**Sessions.** Sec. 2. The sessions of the general assembly shall be biennial, and shall commence on the second Monday in January next ensuing the election of its members; unless the governor of the state shall, in the meantime, convene the general assembly by proclamation.

**Representatives.** Sec. 3. The members of the house of representatives shall be chosen every second year, by the qualified electors of their respective districts, on the second Tuesday in October, except the years of the presidential election, when the election shall be on the Tuesday next after the first Monday in November, and their term of office shall commence on the first day of January next after their election, and continue two years, and until their successors are elected and qualified.

[By the amendment (Sec. 7) inserted at the end of Article II, the election now occurs uniformly in November.]

**Eligibility.** Sec. 4. No person shall be member of the house of representatives who shall not have attained the age of twenty-one years; be a male citizen of the United States, and shall have been an inhabitant of this state one year next preceding his election, and at the time of his election shall have had an actual residence of sixty days in the county or district he may have been chosen to represent.

[By an amendment to the constitution properly proposed (17 G. A., joint res. No. 5; 18 G. A., joint res. No. 6), and adopted by vote of the electors at the general election in 1880, the words “ free white ” were stricken from the second line of this section.]

**Senators.** Sec. 5. Senators shall be chosen for the term of four years, at the same time and place as representatives; they shall be twenty-five years of age, and possess the qualifications of representatives as to residence and citizenship.

**Number and classification.** Sec. 6. The number of senators shall not be less than one-third nor more than one-half the repre-



sentative body; and shall be so classified by lot that one class, being as nearly one-half as possible, shall be elected every two years. When the number of senators is increased, they shall be annexed by lot to one or the other of the two classes, so as to keep them as nearly equal in numbers as practicable.

**Elections determined.** Sec. 7. Each house shall choose its own officers, and judge of the qualification, election, and return of its own members. A contested election shall be determined in such manner as shall be directed by law.

**Quorum.** Sec. 8. A majority of each house shall constitute a quorum to transact business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may compel the attendance of absent members in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.

**Authority of the houses.** Sec. 9. Each house shall sit upon its own adjournments, keep a journal of its proceedings, and publish the same; determine its rules of proceedings, punish members for disorderly behavior, and with the consent of two-thirds, expel a member, but not a second time for the same offense; and shall have all other powers necessary for a branch of the general assembly of a free and independent state.

**Protest.** Sec. 10. Every member of the general assembly shall have the liberty to dissent from or protest against any act or resolution which he may think injurious to the public or an individual, and have the reasons for his dissent entered on the journals; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of any two members present, be entered on the journals.

**Privilege.** Sec. 11. Senators and representatives, in all cases except treason, felony, or breach of the peace, shall be privileged from arrest during the session of the general assembly, and in going to or returning from the same.

**Vacancies.** Sec. 12. When vacancies occur in either house, the governor, or the person exercising the functions of governor, shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

**Doors open.** Sec. 13. The doors of each house shall be open, except on such occasions as, in the opinion of the house, may require secrecy.

**Adjournments.** Sec. 14. Neither house shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which they may be sitting.



**Bills.** Sec. 15. Bills may originate in either house, and may be amended, altered, or rejected by the other; and every bill having passed both houses, shall be signed by the speaker and president of their respective houses.

**Approval.** Sec. 16. Every bill which shall have passed the general assembly, shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the governor. If he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to the house in which it originated, which shall enter the same upon their journal, and proceed to reconsider it; if, after such reconsideration, it again pass both houses, by yeas and nays, by a majority of two-thirds of the members of each house, it shall become a law, notwithstanding the governor's objections. If any bill shall not be returned within three days after it shall have been presented to him (Sunday excepted), the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the general assembly, by adjournment, prevent such return. Any bill submitted to the governor for his approval during the last three days of a session of the general assembly, shall be deposited by him in the office of the secretary of state within thirty days after the adjournment, with his approval, if approved by him, and with his objections, if he disapproves thereof.

**Majority vote.** Sec. 17. No bill shall be passed unless by the assent of a majority of all the members elected to each branch of the general assembly, and the question upon the final passage shall be taken immediately upon its last reading, and the yeas and nays entered on the journal.

**Receipts and expenditures.** Sec. 18. An accurate statement of the receipts and expenditures of the public money shall be attached to and published with the laws at every regular session of the general assembly.

**Impeachment.** Sec. 19. The house of representatives shall have the sole power of impeachment, and all impeachments shall be tried by the senate. When sitting for that purpose, the senators shall be upon oath or affirmation; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

**Who liable to; judgment.** Sec. 20. The governor, judges of the supreme and district courts, and other state officers, shall be liable to impeachment for any misdemeanor or malfeasance in office; but judgment in such cases shall extend only to removal from office, and disqualification to hold any office of honor, trust, or profit under this state; but the party convicted or acquitted shall nevertheless

be liable to indictment, trial, and punishment according to law. All other civil officers shall be tried for misdemeanors and malfeasance in office, in such manner as the general assembly may provide.

**Members not appointed to office.** Sec. 21. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he shall have been elected, be appointed to any civil office of profit under this state, which shall have been created, or the emoluments of which shall have been increased during such term, except such offices as may be filled by elections by the people.

**Disqualification.** Sec. 22. No person holding any lucrative office under the United States, or this state, or any other power, shall be eligible to hold a seat in the general assembly. But offices in the militia, to which there is attached no annual salary, or the office of justice of the peace, or postmaster, whose compensation does not exceed one hundred dollars per annum, or notary public, shall not be deemed lucrative.

**Failure to account.** Sec. 23. No person who may hereafter be a collector or holder of public moneys, shall have a seat in either house of the general assembly, or be eligible to hold any office of trust or profit in this state, until he shall have accounted for and paid into the treasury all sums for which he may be liable.

**Money drawn.** Sec. 24. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law.

**Compensation of members.** Sec. 25. Each member of the first general assembly under this constitution shall receive three dollars per diem while in session; and the further sum of three dollars for every twenty miles traveled in going to and returning from the place where such session is held, by the nearest traveled route; after which they shall receive such compensation as shall be fixed by law; but no general assembly shall have the power to increase the compensation of its members. And when convened in extra session they shall receive the same mileage and per diem compensation as fixed by law for the regular session, and none other.

**Laws, when to take effect; publication.** Sec. 26. No law of the general assembly, passed at a regular session, of a public nature, shall take effect until the fourth day of July next, after the passage thereof. Laws passed at a special session shall take effect ninety days after the adjournment of the general assembly by which they were passed. If the general assembly shall deem any law of immediate importance, they may provide that the same shall take effect by publication in newspapers in the state.

**Divorce.** Sec. 27. No divorce shall be granted by the general assembly.

**Lotteries.** Sec. 28. No lottery shall be authorized by this state; nor shall the sale of lottery tickets be allowed.

**Acts; one subject; expressed in title.** Sec. 29. Every act shall embrace but one subject, and matters properly connected therewith; which subject shall be expressed in the title. But if any subject shall be embraced in an act which shall not be expressed in the title, such act shall be void only as to so much thereof as shall not be expressed in the title.

**Local or special laws.** Sec. 30. The general assembly shall not pass local or special laws in the following cases:

For the assessment and collection of taxes for state, county, or road purposes;

For laying out, opening, and working roads or highways;

For changing the names of persons;

For the incorporation of cities and towns;

For vacating roads, town plats, streets, alleys, or public squares;

For locating or changing county seats.

**Laws general and uniform; boundaries of counties.** In all the cases above enumerated, and in all other cases where a general law can be made applicable, all law shall be general, and of uniform operation throughout the state; and no law changing the boundary lines of any county shall have effect until upon being submitted to the people of the counties affected by the change, at a general election, it shall be approved by a majority of the votes in each county, cast for and against it.

**Extra compensation.** Sec. 31. No extra compensation shall be made to any officer, public agent, or contractor, after the service shall have been rendered, or the contract entered into; nor shall any money be paid on any claim, the subject-matter of which shall not have been provided for by pre-existing laws, and no public money or property shall be appropriated for local or private purposes, unless such appropriation, compensation, or claim be allowed by two-thirds of the members elected to each branch of the general assembly.

**Oath of members.** Sec. 32. Members of the general assembly shall, before they enter upon the duties of their respective offices, take and subscribe the following oath or affirmation: "I do solemnly swear (or affirm, as the case may be) that I will support the constitution of the United States, and the constitution of the state of



Iowa, and that I will faithfully discharge the duties of senator (or representative, as the case may be), according to the best of my ability." And members of the general assembly are hereby empowered to administer to each other the said oath or affirmation.

**Census.** Sec. 33. The general assembly shall, in the years one thousand eight hundred and fifty-nine, one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, one thousand eight hundred and sixty-five, one thousand eight hundred and sixty-seven, one thousand eight hundred and sixty-nine, and one thousand eight hundred and seventy-five, and every ten years thereafter, cause an enumeration to be made of all the inhabitants of the state.

[By proper legislative action (11 G. A., chap. 98, and 12 G. A., joint res. No. XI) a proposed amendment striking the word "white" from this section, as it originally stood, was submitted to the electors at the general election of 1868 and adopted.]

**Apportionment.** Sec. 34. The senate shall be composed of fifty members to be elected from the several senatorial districts, established by law, and at the next session of the general assembly, held following the taking of the state and national census, they shall be apportioned among the several counties or districts of the state, according to population as shown by the last preceding census.

**Districts.** Sec. 35. The house of representatives shall consist of not more than one hundred and eight members. The ratio of representation shall be determined by dividing the whole number of the population of the state as shown by the last preceding state or national census, by the whole number of counties then existing or organized, but each county shall constitute one representative district and be entitled to one representative, but each county having a population in excess of the ratio number, as herein provided of three-fifths or more of such ratio number shall be entitled to one additional representative, but said addition shall extend only to the nine counties having the greatest population.

**Ratio of representation.** Sec. 36. The general assembly shall, at the first regular session held following the adoption of this amendment, and at each succeeding regular session held next after the taking of such census, fix the ratio of representation, and apportion the additional representatives, as hereinbefore required.



\*\* [By proper legislative action (29 G. A., joint res. No. 2, and 30 G. A., joint res. No. 2) a proposed amendment repealing sections 34, 35 and 36 of Article III, and adopting the three preceding sections in lieu thereof, was submitted to the electors at the general election in 1904 and adopted. The three sections repealed were as follows :

\* “ **Apportionment.** Sec. 34. The number of senators shall, at the next session following each period of making such enumeration, and the next session following each United States census, be fixed by law, and apportioned among the several counties according to the number of inhabitants in each.

\* “ **Districts.** Sec. 35. The senate shall not consist of more than fifty members, nor the house of representatives of more than one hundred; and they shall be apportioned among the several counties and representative districts of the state according to the number of inhabitants in each, upon ratios to be fixed by law; but no representative district shall contain more than four organized counties, and each district shall be entitled to at least one representative. Every county and district which shall have a number of inhabitants equal to one-half of the ratio fixed by law, shall be entitled to one representative; and any one county containing in addition to the ratio fixed by law one-half of that number, or more, shall be entitled to one additional representative. No floating district shall hereafter be formed.

“ **Ratio of representation.** Sec. 36. At its first session under this constitution, and at every subsequent regular session, the general assembly shall fix the ratio of representation, and also form into representative districts those counties which will not be entitled singly to a representative.”]

**Districts.** Sec. 37. When a congressional, senatorial, or representative district shall be composed of two or more counties, it shall not be entirely separated by any county belonging to another district; and no county shall be divided in forming a congressional, senatorial, or representative district.

**Elections by general assembly.** Sec. 38. In all elections by the general assembly, the members thereof shall vote *viva voce*, and the votes shall be entered on the journal.

\*\* The vote on the amendment was 171,382 for and 165,076 against its adoption. Practically the same amendment was, by proper legislative action (26 G. A., joint res. No. 9, and 27 G. A., joint res. No. 1) submitted to the electors at the general election in 1898 and was rejected, the vote being 33,872 for and 76,931 against its adoption.

\* By proper legislative action (11 G. A., chap. 98, and 12 G. A., joint res. No. XI) a proposed amendment striking the word “white” from this section as it originally stood, was submitted to the electors at the general election, in 1868, and adopted.

## ARTICLE IV

## EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT

**Governor.** Section 1. The supreme executive power of this state shall be vested in a chief magistrate, who shall be styled the governor of the state of Iowa.

**Election and term.** Sec. 2. The governor shall be elected by the qualified electors at the time and place of voting for members of the general assembly, and shall hold his office two years from the time of his installation, and until his successor is elected and qualified.

**Lieutenant-governor; returns of elections.** Sec. 3. There shall be a lieutenant-governor, who shall hold his office two years, and be elected at the same time as the governor. In voting for governor and lieutenant-governor, the electors shall designate for whom they vote as governor, and for whom as lieutenant-governor. The returns of every election for governor and lieutenant-governor, shall be sealed up and transmitted to the seat of government of the state, directed to the speaker of the house of representatives, who shall open and publish them in the presence of both houses of the general assembly.

**Election by general assembly.** Sec. 4. The persons respectively having the highest number of votes, for governor and lieutenant-governor, shall be declared duly elected; but in case two or more persons shall have an equal, and the highest number of votes for either office, the general assembly shall, by joint vote, forthwith proceed to elect one of said persons governor, or lieutenant-governor, as the case may be.

**Contested elections.** Sec. 5. Contested elections for governor, or lieutenant-governor, shall be determined by the general assembly in such manner as may be prescribed by law.

**Eligibility.** Sec. 6. No person shall be eligible to the office of governor, or lieutenant-governor, who shall not have been a citizen of the United States, and a resident of the state two years next preceding the election, and attained the age of thirty years at the time of said election.

**Commander-in-chief.** Sec. 7. The governor shall be commander-in-chief of the militia, the army, and navy of this state.

**Duties.** Sec. 8. He shall transact all executive business with the officers of government, civil and military, and may require information in writing from the officers of the executive department upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices.

**Execution of laws.** Sec. 9. He shall take care that the laws are faithfully executed.

**Vacancies.** Sec. 10. When any office shall, from any cause, become vacant, and no mode is provided by the constitution and laws for filling such vacancy, the governor shall have power to fill such vacancy, by granting a commission, which shall expire at the end of the next session of the general assembly, or at the next election by the people.

**Convening assembly.** Sec. 11. He may, on extraordinary occasions, convene the general assembly by proclamation, and shall state to both houses, when assembled, the purpose for which they shall have been convened.

**Message.** Sec. 12. He shall communicate, by message, to the general assembly, at every regular session, the condition of the state, and recommend such matters as he shall deem expedient.

**Adjournment.** Sec. 13. In case of disagreement between the two houses with respect to the time of adjournment, the governor shall have power to adjourn the general assembly to such time as he may think proper; but no such adjournment shall be beyond the time fixed for the regular meeting of the next general assembly.

**Disqualification.** Sec. 14. No person shall, while holding any office under the authority of the United States, or this state, execute the office of governor, or lieutenant-governor, except as hereinafter expressly provided.

**Term; compensation of lieutenant-governor.** Sec. 15. The official term of governor and lieutenant-governor shall commence on the second Monday of January next after their election, and continue for two years, and until their successors are elected and qualified. The lieutenant-governor, while acting as governor, shall receive the same pay as provided for governor; and while presiding in the senate, shall receive as compensation therefor the same mileage and double the per diem pay provided for a senator, and none other.

**Pardons.** Sec. 16. The governor shall have power to grant reprieves, commutations, and pardons, after conviction, for all offenses except treason and cases of impeachment, subject to such regulations as may be provided by law. Upon conviction for treason, he shall have power to suspend the execution of the sentence until the case shall be reported to the general assembly at its next meeting, when the general assembly shall either grant a pardon, commute the sentence, direct the execution of the sentence, or grant



a further reprieve. He shall have power to remit fines and forfeitures, under such regulations as may be prescribed by law; and shall report to the general assembly, at its next meeting, each case of reprieve, commutation, or pardon granted, and the reasons therefor; and also all persons in whose favor remission of fines and forfeitures shall have been made, and the several amounts remitted.

**Lieutenant-governor to act as governor.** Sec. 17. In case of the death, impeachment, resignation, removal from office, or other disability of the governor, the powers and duties of the office for the residue of the term, or until he shall be acquitted, or the disability removed, shall devolve upon the lieutenant-governor.

**President of senate.** Sec. 18. The lieutenant-governor shall be president of the senate, but shall only vote when the senate is equally divided; and in case of his absence, or impeachment, or when he shall exercise the office of governor, the senate shall choose a president pro tempore.

**Vacancies.** Sec. 19. If the lieutenant-governor, while acting as governor, shall be impeached, displaced, resign, or die, or otherwise become incapable of performing the duties of the office, the president pro tempore of the senate shall act as governor until the vacancy is filled, or the disability removed; and if the president of the senate, for any of the above causes, shall be rendered incapable of performing the duties pertaining to the office of governor, the same shall devolve upon the speaker of the house of representatives.

**Seal of state.** Sec. 20. There shall be a seal of this state, which shall be kept by the governor, and used by him officially, and shall be called the great seal of the state of Iowa.

**Grants and commissions.** Sec. 21. All grants and commissions shall be in the name and by the authority of the people of the state of Iowa, sealed with the great seal of the state, signed by the governor, and countersigned by the secretary of state.

**Secretary, auditor and treasurer.** Sec. 22. A secretary of state, auditor of state, and treasurer of state, shall be elected by the qualified electors, who shall continue in office two years, and until their successors are elected and qualified; and perform such duties as may be required by law.



## ARTICLE V

## JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT

**Courts.** Section 1. The judicial power shall be vested in a supreme court, district court, and such other courts, inferior to the supreme court, as the general assembly may, from time to time, establish.

**Supreme Court.** Sec. 2. The supreme court shall consist of three judges, two of whom shall constitute a quorum to hold court.

[As to the number of judges, see statutory provisions.]

**Judges elected.** Sec. 3. The judges of the supreme court shall be elected by the qualified electors of the state, and shall hold their court at such time and place as the general assembly may prescribe. The judges of the supreme court so elected, shall be classified so that one judge shall go out of office every two years; and the judge holding the shortest term of office under such classification, shall be chief justice of the court during his term, and so on in rotation. After the expiration of their terms of office, under such classification, the term of each judge of the supreme court shall be six years, and until his successor shall have been elected and qualified. The judges of the supreme court shall be ineligible to any other office in the state, during the term for which they shall have been elected.

**Jurisdiction.** Sec. 4. The supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction only in cases in chancery, and shall constitute a court for the correction of errors at law, under such restrictions as the general assembly may by law prescribe; and shall have power to issue all writs and process necessary to secure justice to parties, and exercise a supervisory control over all inferior judicial tribunals throughout the state.

**District court and judge.** Sec. 5. The district court shall consist of a single judge, who shall be elected by the qualified electors of the district in which he resides. The judge of the district court shall hold his office for the term of four years, and until his successor shall have been elected and qualified; and shall be ineligible to any other office, except that of judge of the supreme court, during the term for which he was elected.

**Jurisdiction.** Sec. 6. The district court shall be a court of law and equity, which shall be distinct and separate jurisdictions, and have jurisdiction in civil and criminal matters arising in their respective districts, in such manner as shall be prescribed by law.

**Conservators of the peace.** Sec. 7. The judges of the supreme and district courts shall be conservators of the peace throughout the state.

**Style of process.** Sec. 8. The style of all process shall be "The State of Iowa," and all prosecutions shall be conducted in the name and by the authority of the same.

**Salaries.** Sec. 9. The salary of each judge of the supreme court shall be two thousand dollars per annum; and that of each district judge one thousand six hundred dollars per annum, until the year eighteen hundred and sixty; after which time they shall severally receive such compensation as the general assembly may, by law, prescribe; which compensation shall not be increased or diminished during the term for which they shall have been elected.

**Judicial districts.** Sec. 10. The state shall be divided into eleven judicial districts; and after the year eighteen hundred and sixty, the general assembly may reorganize the judicial districts, and increase or diminish the number of districts, or the number of judges of the said court, and may increase the number of judges of the supreme court; but such increase or diminution shall not be more than one district, or one judge of either court, at any one session, and no reorganization of the districts, or diminution of the judges, shall have the effect of removing a judge from office. Such reorganization of the districts, or any change in the boundaries thereof, or any increase or diminution of the number of judges, shall take place every four years thereafter, if necessary, and at no other time.

[Amendment.] At any regular session of the general assembly, the state may be divided into the necessary judicial districts for district court purposes, or the said districts may be reorganized and the number of the districts and the judges of said courts increased or diminished; but no reorganization of the districts or diminution of the judges shall have the effect of removing a judge from office.

[By proper legislative action (19 G. A., joint res. No. 12 and 20 G. A., joint res. No. 13) the foregoing was submitted to the electors at the general election in 1884 as a proposed amendment to the constitution, and was by them adopted.]

**When chosen.** Sec. 11. The judges of the supreme and district courts shall be chosen at the general election; and the term of office of each judge shall commence on the first day of January next after his election.

**Attorney-general.** Sec. 12. The general assembly shall provide by law, for the election of an attorney-general by the people, whose

term of office shall be two years, and until his successor shall have been elected and qualified.

**County attorney.** Sec. 13. The qualified electors of each county shall, at the general election in the year eighteen hundred and eighty-six, and every two years thereafter elect a county attorney, who shall be a resident of the county for which he is elected, and shall hold his office for two years, and until his successor shall have been elected and qualified.

[By proper legislative action (19 G. A., joint res. No. 12, and 20 G. A., joint res. No. 13) a proposition to substitute the foregoing for the original section was submitted to the electors at the general election in 1884, and by them adopted. The original section was as follows :

Sec. 13. The qualified electors of each judicial district shall, at the time of the election of district judge, elect a district attorney, who shall be a resident of the district for which he is elected, and who shall hold his office for the term of four years, and until his successor shall have been elected and qualified.]

**Carrying into effect.** Sec. 14. It shall be the duty of the general assembly to provide for the carrying into effect of this article, and to provide for a general system of practice in all the courts of this state.

**The grand jury.** (Sec. 15). The grand jury may consist of any number of members not less than five, nor more than fifteen, as the general assembly may by law provide, or the general assembly may provide for holding persons to answer for any criminal offense without the intervention of the grand jury.

[By proper legislative action (19 G. A., joint res. No. 12, and 20 G. A., joint resolution No. 13) the foregoing was submitted to the electors at the general election in 1884 as a proposed amendment to the constitution, and was by them adopted.]

## ARTICLE VI

### MILITIA

**Who constitute.** Section 1. The militia of this state shall be composed of all able-bodied male citizens, between the ages of eighteen and forty-five years, except such as are or may hereafter be exempt by the laws of the United States, or of this state; and shall be armed, equipped, and trained, as the general assembly may provide by law.

[By proper legislative action (11 G. A., chap. 98, and 12 G. A. joint res. No. XI) a proposed amendment striking the word



“ white ” from this section, as it originally stood, was submitted to the electors at the general election in 1868 and adopted.]

**Exemption.** Sec. 2. No person or persons conscientiously scrupulous of bearing arms shall be compelled to do military duty in time of peace; provided that such person or persons shall pay an equivalent for such exemption in the same manner as other citizens.

**Officers.** Sec. 3. All commissioned officers of the militia (staff officers excepted) shall be elected by the persons liable to perform military duty, and shall be commissioned by the governor.

## ARTICLE VII

### STATE DEBTS

**Credit not to be loaned.** Section 1. The credit of the state shall not, in any manner, be given or loaned to, or in aid of, any individual, association, or corporation; and the state shall never assume, or become responsible for the debts or liabilities of any individual, association, or corporation, unless incurred in time of war for the benefit of the state.

**Limitation.** Sec. 2. The state may contract debts to supply casual deficits or failures in revenue; or to meet expenses not otherwise provided for; but the aggregate amount of such debts, direct and contingent, whether contracted by virtue of one or more acts of the general assembly, or at different periods of time, shall never exceed the sum of two hundred and fifty thousand dollars; and the money arising from the creation of such debts shall be applied to the purpose for which it was obtained, or to repay the debts so contracted, and to no other purpose whatever.

**Losses to school funds.** Sec. 3. All losses to the permanent school, or university fund of this state, which shall have been occasioned by the defalcation, mismanagement, or fraud of the agents or officers controlling and managing the same, shall be audited by the proper authorities of the state. The amount so audited shall be a permanent funded debt against the state, in favor of the respective fund sustaining the loss, upon which not less than six per cent annual interest shall be paid. The amount of liability so created shall not be counted as a part of the indebtedness authorized by the second section of this article.

**War debts.** Sec. 4. In addition to the above limited power to contract debts, the state may contract debts to repel invasion,



suppress insurrection, or defend the state in war; but the money arising from the debts so contracted shall be applied to the purpose for which it was raised, or to repay such debts, and to no other purpose whatever.

**Question of incurring debt submitted.** Sec. 5. Except the debts hereinbefore specified in this article, no debt shall be hereafter contracted by, or on behalf of this state, unless such debt shall be authorized by some law for some single work or object, to be distinctly specified therein; and such law shall impose and provide for the collection of a direct annual tax, sufficient to pay the interest on such debt, as it falls due and also to pay and discharge the principal of such debt, within twenty years from the time of the contracting thereof; but no such law shall take effect until at a general election it shall have been submitted to the people, and have received a majority of all the votes cast for and against it at such election; and all money raised by authority of such law, shall be applied only to the specific object therein stated, or to the payment of the debt created thereby; and such law shall be published in at least one newspaper in each county, if one is published therein, throughout the state, for three months preceding the election at which it is submitted to the people.

**Legislature may repeal.** Sec. 6. The legislature may, at any time, after the approval of such law by the people, if no debt shall have been contracted in pursuance thereof, repeal the same; and may at any time forbid the contracting of any further debt, or liability, under such law; but the tax imposed by such law, in proportion to the debt or liability which may have been contracted in pursuance thereof, shall remain in force and be irrepealable, and be annually collected, until the principal and interest are fully paid.

**Tax imposed distinctly stated.** Sec. 7. Every law which imposes, continues, or revives a tax, shall distinctly state the tax, and the object to which it is to be applied; and it shall not be sufficient to refer to any other law to fix such tax or object.

## ARTICLE VIII

### CORPORATIONS

**How created.** Section 1. No corporation shall be created by special laws; but the general assembly shall provide by general laws, for the organization of all corporations hereafter to be created, except as hereinafter provided.

**Property taxable.** Sec. 2. The property of all corporations for pecuniary profit shall be subject to taxation the same as that of individuals.

**State not to be a stockholder.** Sec. 3. The state shall not become a stockholder in any corporation, nor shall it assume or pay the debt or liability of any corporation, unless incurred in time of war for the benefit of the state.

**Municipal corporations.** Sec. 4. No political or municipal corporation shall become a stockholder in any banking corporation, directly or indirectly.

**Act creating banking associations.** Sec. 5. No act of the general assembly, authorizing or creating corporations or associations with banking powers, nor amendments thereto, shall take effect, or in any manner be in force, until the same shall have been submitted, separately, to the people, at a general or special election, as provided by law, to be held not less than three months after the passage of the act, and shall have been approved by a majority of all the electors voting for and against it at such election.

**State bank.** Sec. 6. Subject to the provisions of the foregoing section, the general assembly may also provide for the establishment of a state bank with branches.

**Specie basis.** Sec. 7. If a state bank be established, it shall be founded on an actual specie basis, and the branches shall be mutually responsible for each other's liabilities upon all notes, bills, and other issues intended for circulation as money.

**General banking law.** Sec. 8. If a general banking law shall be enacted, it shall provide for the registry and countersigning, by an officer of state, of all bills, or paper credit designed to circulate as money, and require security to the full amount thereof, to be deposited with the state treasurer, in United States stocks, or in interest-paying stocks of states in good credit and standing, to be rated at ten per cent below their average value in the city of New York, for the thirty days next preceding their deposit; and in case of a depreciation of any portion of such stocks, to the amount of ten per cent on the dollar, the bank or banks owning said stock shall be required to make up said deficiency by depositing additional stocks; and said law shall also provide for the recording of the names of all stockholders in such corporations, the amount of stock held by each, the time of any transfer, and to whom.

**Stockholders responsible.** Sec. 9. Every stockholder in a banking corporation or institution shall be individually responsible

and liable to its creditors, over and above the amount of stock by him or her held, to an amount equal to his or her respective shares so held, for all its liabilities accruing while he or she remains such stockholder.

**Bill-holders preferred.** Sec. 10. In case of the insolvency of any banking institution, the bill-holders shall have a preference over its other creditors.

**Suspension of specie payments.** Sec. 11. The suspension of specie payments by banking institutions shall never be permitted or sanctioned.

**Amendment or repeal of charters; exclusive privileges.** Sec. 12. Subject to the provisions of this article, the general assembly shall have power to amend or repeal all laws for the organization or creation of corporations, or granting of special or exclusive privileges or immunities, by a vote of two-thirds of each branch of the general assembly; and no exclusive privileges, except as in this article provided, shall ever be granted.

## ARTICLE IX

### EDUCATION AND SCHOOL LANDS

#### 1 — EDUCATION

**Board of education.** Section 1. The educational interest of the state, including common schools and other educational institutions, shall be under the management of a board of education, which shall consist of the lieutenant-governor, who shall be the presiding officer of the board, and have the casting vote in case of a tie, and one member to be elected from each judicial district in the state.

**Who eligible.** Sec. 2. No person shall be eligible as a member of said board who shall not have attained the age of twenty-five years, and shall have been one year a citizen of the state.

**How elected.** Sec. 3. One member of said board shall be chosen by the qualified electors of each district, and shall hold the office for the term of four years, and until his successor is elected and qualified. After the first election under this constitution, the board shall be divided, as nearly as practicable, into two equal classes, and the seats of the first class shall be vacated after the expiration of two years; and one-half of the board shall be chosen every two years thereafter.



**First session.** Sec. 4. The first session of the board of education shall be held at the seat of government, on the first Monday of December, after their election; after which the general assembly may fix the time and place of meeting.

**Limited.** Sec. 5. The session of the board shall be limited to twenty days, and but one session shall be held in any one year, except upon extraordinary occasions, when, upon the recommendation of two-thirds of the board, the governor may order a special session.

**Secretary.** Sec. 6. The board of education shall appoint a secretary, who shall be the executive officer of the board, and perform such duties as may be imposed upon him by the board, and the laws of the state. They shall keep a journal of their proceedings, which shall be published and distributed in the same manner as the journals of the general assembly.

**Rules and regulations.** Sec. 7. All rules and regulations made by the board shall be published and distributed to the several counties, townships, and school districts, as may be provided for by the board, and when so made, published, and distributed, they shall have the force and effect of law.

**Power to make.** Sec. 8. The board of education shall have full power and authority to legislate and make all needful rules and regulations in relation to common schools, and other educational institutions, that are instituted, to receive aid from the school or university fund of this state; but all acts, rules, and regulations of said board may be altered, amended, or repealed by the general assembly; and when so altered, amended, or repealed, they shall not be re-enacted by the board of education.

**Governor ex-officio a member.** Sec. 9. The governor of the state shall be, ex-officio, a member of said board.

**Expenses.** Sec. 10. The board shall have no power to levy taxes, or make appropriations of money. Their contingent expenses shall be provided for by the general assembly.

**State university.** Sec. 11. The state university shall be established at one place without branches at any other place, and the university fund shall be applied to that institution, and no other.

**Common schools.** Sec. 12. The board of education shall provide for the education of all the youths of the state, through a system of common schools, and such schools shall be organized and kept in each school district at least three months in each year. Any district failing, for two consecutive years, to organize and keep up



a school, as aforesaid, may be deprived of their portion of the school fund.

**Compensation.** Sec. 13. The members of the board of education shall each receive the same per diem during the term of their session, and mileage going to and returning therefrom, as members of the general assembly.

**Quorum; style of acts.** Sec. 14. A majority of the board shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business; but no rule, regulation, or law, for the government of common schools or other educational institutions shall pass without the concurrence of a majority of all the members of the board, which shall be expressed by the yeas and nays on the final passage. The style of all acts of the board shall be, "Be it enacted by the board of education of the state of Iowa."

**Board may be abolished.** Sec. 15. At any time after the year one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, the general assembly shall have power to abolish or reorganize said board of education, and provide for the educational interest of the state in any other manner that to them shall seem best and proper.

The board of education was abolished by 10th G. A., ch. 52. Sec. 1.]

## 2—SCHOOL FUNDS AND SCHOOL LANDS

**Under control of the general assembly.** Section 1. The educational and school fund and lands, shall be under the control and management of the general assembly of this state.

**Permanent fund.** Sec. 2. The university lands, and the proceeds thereof, and all moneys belonging to said fund shall be a permanent fund for the sole use of the state university. The interest arising from the same shall be annually appropriated for the support and benefit of said university.

**Lands appropriated.** Sec. 3. The general assembly shall encourage, by all suitable means, the promotion of intellectual, scientific, moral, and agricultural improvement. The proceeds of all lands that have been, or hereafter may be, granted by the United States to this state, for the support of schools, which may have been or shall hereafter be sold, or disposed of, and the five hundred thousand acres of land granted to the new states, under an act of Congress, distributing the proceeds of the public lands among the several states of the Union, approved in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and forty-one, and all estates of deceased

persons who may have died without leaving a will or heir, and also such per cent as has been or may hereafter be granted by Congress, on the sale of lands in this state, shall be, and remain a perpetual fund, the interest of which, together with all rents of the unsold lands, and such other means as the general assembly may provide, shall be inviolably appropriated to the support of common schools throughout the state.

**Fines, etc., how appropriated.** Sec. 4. The money which may have been or shall be paid by persons as an equivalent for exemption from military duty, and the clear proceeds of all fines collected in the several counties for any breach of the penal laws, shall be exclusively applied in the several counties in which such money is paid, or fine collected, among the several school districts of said counties, in proportion to the number of youths subject to enumeration in such districts, to the support of common schools, or the establishment of libraries, as the board of education shall from time to time provide.

[There are statutory provisions on this subject.]

**Proceeds of lands.** Sec. 5. The general assembly shall take measures for the protection, improvement, or other disposition of such lands as have been, or may hereafter be reserved, or granted by the United States, or any person or persons to this state, for the use of the university, and the funds accruing from the rents or sale of such lands, or from any other source for the purpose aforesaid, shall be, and remain, a permanent fund, the interest of which shall be applied to the support of said university, for the promotion of literature, the arts and sciences, as may be authorized by the terms of such grant. And it shall be the duty of the general assembly, as soon as may be, to provide effectual means for the improvement and permanent security of the funds of said university.

**Agents of school funds.** Sec. 6. The financial agents of the school funds shall be the same that, by law, receive and control the state and county revenue, for other civil purposes, under such regulations as may be provided by law.

**Distribution.** Sec. 7. The money subject to the support and maintenance of common schools shall be distributed to the districts in proportion to the number of youths, between the ages of five and twenty-one years, in such manner as may be provided by the general assembly.

## ARTICLE X

## AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION

**How proposed; submission.** Section 1. Any amendment or amendments to this constitution may be proposed in either house of the general assembly; and if the same shall be agreed to by a majority of the members elected to each of the two houses, such proposed amendment shall be entered on their journals, with the yeas and nays taken thereon, and referred to the legislature to be chosen at the next general election, and shall be published, as provided by law, for three months previous to the time of making such choice; and if, in the general assembly so next chosen as aforesaid, such proposed amendment or amendments shall be agreed to by a majority of all the members elected to each house, then it shall be the duty of the general assembly to submit such proposed amendment or amendments to the people in such manner, and at such time as the general assembly shall provide; and if the people shall approve and ratify such amendment or amendments by a majority of the electors qualified to vote for members of the general assembly, voting thereon, such amendment or amendments shall become a part of the constitution of this state.

**More than one.** Sec. 2. If two or more amendments shall be submitted at the same time, they shall be submitted in such manner that the electors shall vote for or against each of such amendments separately.

**Convention.** Sec. 3. At the general election to be held in the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy, and in each tenth year thereafter, and also at such times as the general assembly may, by law, provide, the question, " Shall there be a convention to revise the constitution, and amend the same? " shall be decided by the electors qualified to vote for members of the general assembly; and in case a majority of the electors so qualified, voting at such election for and against such proposition, shall decide in favor of a convention for such purpose, the general assembly, at its next session, shall provide by law for the election of delegates to such convention.



## ARTICLE XI

## MISCELLANEOUS

**Jurisdiction of justice of the peace.** Section 1. The jurisdiction of justices of the peace shall extend to all civil cases (except cases in chancery, and cases where the question of title to real estate may arise), where the amount in controversy does not exceed one hundred dollars, and by the consent of parties may be extended to any amount not exceeding three hundred dollars.

**Counties.** Sec. 2. No new county shall be hereafter created containing less than four hundred and thirty-two square miles; nor shall the territory of any organized county be reduced below that area; except the county of Worth, and the counties west of it along the northern boundary of this state, may be organized without additional territory.

**Indebtedness of political or municipal corporations.** Sec. 3. No county, or other political or municipal corporation shall be allowed to become indebted in any manner, or for any purpose, to an amount in the aggregate, exceeding five per centum on the value of the taxable property within such county or corporation — to be ascertained by the last state and county tax lists, previous to the incurring of such indebtedness.

**Boundaries.** Sec. 4. The boundaries of the state may be enlarged, with the consent of congress and the general assembly.

**Oath of office.** Sec. 5. Every person elected or appointed to any office, shall, before entering upon the duties thereof, take an oath or affirmation to support the Constitution of the United States, and of this state, and also an oath of office.

**How vacancies filled.** Sec. 6. In all cases of elections to fill vacancies in office occurring before the expiration of a full term, the person so elected shall hold for the residue of the unexpired term; and all persons appointed to fill vacancies in office, shall hold until the next general election, and until their successors are elected and qualified.

**Land grants located.** Sec. 7. The general assembly shall not locate any of the public lands which have been, or may be granted by congress to this state, and the location of which may be given to the general assembly, upon lands actually settled, without the consent of the occupant. The extent of the claim of such occupant so exempted, shall not exceed three hundred and twenty acres.



**Seat of government; state university.** Sec. 8. The seat of government is hereby permanently established, as now fixed by law, at the city of Des Moines, in the county of Polk; and the state university at Iowa City, in the county of Johnson.

## ARTICLE XII

### SCHEDULE

**Supreme law.** Section 1. This constitution shall be the supreme law of the state, and any law inconsistent therewith, shall be void. The general assembly shall pass all laws necessary to carry this constitution into effect.

**Laws in force.** Sec. 2. All laws now in force, and not inconsistent with this constitution, shall remain in force until they shall expire or be repealed.

**Proceedings not affected.** Sec. 3. All indictments, prosecutions, suits, pleas, complaints, process, and other proceedings pending in any of the courts, shall be prosecuted to final judgment and execution; and all appeals, writs of error, certiorari, and injunctions, shall be carried on in the several courts, in the same manner as now provided by law, and all offenses, misdemeanors, and crimes that may have been committed before the taking effect of this constitution, shall be subject to indictment, trial, and punishment, in the same manner as they would have been had not this constitution been made.

**Fines inure to the state.** Sec. 4. All fines, penalties, or forfeitures due, or to become due, or accruing to the state, or to any county therein, or to the school fund, shall inure to the state, county, or school fund, in the manner prescribed by law.

**Bonds in force.** Sec. 5. All bonds executed to the state, or to any officer in his official capacity, shall remain in force and inure to the use of those concerned.

**First election for governor and lieutenant-governor.** Sec. 6. The first election under this constitution shall be held on the second Tuesday in October, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-seven, at which time the electors of the state shall elect the governor and lieutenant-governor. There shall also be elected at such election, the successors of such state senators as were elected at the August election, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-four, and members of the house of representatives, who shall be elected in accordance with the act of apportionment, enacted at the session of the general assembly which commenced

on the first Monday of December, one thousand eight hundred and fifty-six.

**For secretary, auditor, etc.** Sec. 7. The first election for secretary, auditor, and treasurer of state, attorney-general, district judges, members of the board of education, district attorneys, members of congress, and such state officers as shall be elected at the April election, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-seven (except the superintendent of public instruction), and such county officers as were elected at the August election, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-six, except prosecuting attorneys, shall be held on the second Tuesday of October, one thousand eight hundred and fifty-eight: provided that the time for which any district judge or other state or county officer elected at the April election in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-eight shall not extend beyond the time fixed for filling like offices at the October election, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-eight.

**For judges of supreme court.** Sec. 8. The first election for judges of the supreme court, and such county officers as shall be elected at the August election, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-seven, shall be held on the second Tuesday of October, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-nine.

**First session of general assembly.** Sec. 9. The first regular session of the general assembly shall be held in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-eight, commencing on the second Monday of January of said year.

**Senators.** Sec. 10. Senators elected at the August election, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-six, shall continue in office until the second Tuesday of October, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-nine, at which time their successors shall be elected as may be prescribed by law.

**Offices not vacated.** Sec. 11. Every person elected by popular vote, by a vote of the general assembly, or who may hold office by executive appointment, which office is continued by this constitution, and every person who shall be so elected or appointed to any such office, before the taking effect of this constitution (except as in this constitution otherwise provided), shall continue in office until the term for which such person has been or may be elected or appointed shall expire; but no such person shall continue in office after the taking effect of this constitution, for a longer period than the term of such office, in this constitution prescribed.

**Judicial districts.** Sec. 12. The general assembly, at the first session under this constitution, shall district the state into eleven judicial districts, for district court purposes; and shall also provide for the apportionment of the members of the general assembly in accordance with the provisions of this constitution.

**Submission of constitution.** Sec. 13. This constitution shall be submitted to the electors of the state at the August election, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-seven, in the several election districts in this state. The ballots at such election shall be written or printed as follows: Those in favor of the constitution, "new constitution — yes." Those against the constitution, "new constitution — no." The elections shall be conducted in the same manner as the general elections of the state, and the poll-books shall be returned and canvassed as provided in the twenty-fifth chapter of the code, and abstracts shall be forwarded to the secretary of state, which abstracts shall be canvassed in the manner provided for the canvass of state officers. And if it shall appear that a majority of all the votes cast at such election for and against this constitution are in favor of the same, the governor shall immediately issue his proclamation stating that fact, and such constitution shall be the constitution of the state of Iowa, and shall take effect from and after the publication of said proclamation.

**Proposition to strike out the word "white."** Sec. 14. At the same election that this constitution is submitted to the people for its adoption or rejection, a proposition to amend the same by striking out the word "white," from the article on the "right of suffrage," shall be separately submitted to the electors of this state for adoption or rejection, in the manner following, viz.: A separate ballot may be given by every person having a right to vote at said election, to be deposited in a separate box. And those given for the adoption of such proposition shall have the words, "shall the word 'white' be stricken out of the article on the 'right of suffrage?' yes." And those given against the proposition shall have the words, "shall the word 'white' be stricken out of the article on the 'right of suffrage?' no." And if at said election the number of ballots cast in favor of said proposition, shall be equal to a majority of those cast for and against this constitution, then said word "white" shall be stricken from said article and be no part thereof.

**Mills county.** Sec. 15. Until otherwise directed by law, the county of Mills shall be in and a part of the sixth judicial district of this state.



**Biennial elections.** Sec. 16. The first general election after the adoption of this amendment shall be held on the Tuesday next after the first Monday in November in the year one thousand nine hundred and six, and general elections shall be held biennially thereafter. In the year one thousand nine hundred and six there shall be elected a governor, lieutenant-governor, secretary of state, auditor of state, treasurer of state, attorney-general, two judges of the supreme court, the successors of the judges of the district court whose terms of office expire on December 31st, one thousand nine hundred and six, state senators who would otherwise be chosen in the year one thousand nine hundred and five, and members of the house of representatives. The terms of office of the judges of the supreme court which would otherwise expire on December 31st, in odd-numbered years, and all other elective state, county, and township officers, whose terms of office would otherwise expire in January in the year one thousand nine hundred and six, and members of the general assembly whose successors would otherwise be chosen at the general election in the year one thousand nine hundred and five, are hereby extended one year and until their successors are elected and qualified. The terms of offices of senators whose successors would otherwise be chosen in the year one thousand nine hundred and seven are hereby extended one year and until their successors are elected and qualified. The general assembly shall make such changes in the law governing the time of election and terms of office of all other elective officers as shall be necessary to make the time of their election and terms of office conform to this amendment, and shall provide which of the judges of the supreme court shall serve as chief justice. The general assembly shall meet in regular session on the second Monday in January, in the year one thousand nine hundred and six, and also on the second Monday in January in the year one thousand nine hundred and seven, and biennially thereafter.

[By proper legislative action (29 G. A., joint res. No. 5 and 30 G. A., joint res. No. 1) a proposed amendment, adding the foregoing section numbered 16 to Article XII, was submitted to the electors at the general election in 1904, and adopted. Practically the same amendment was adopted by the people November 6, 1900, but the supreme court February 1, 1901, in the case of the State of Iowa ex rel Marsh W. Bailey vs. S. W. Brookhart, respondent, appellant, held that the amendment, section 16, was not proposed and adopted as required by the constitution, and did not become a part thereof.]

Done in convention at Iowa City, this fifth day of March, in the



year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and fifty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America, the eighty-first.

In testimony whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names:

TIMOTHY DAY,	A. H. MARVIN,	S. AYRES,
S. G. WINCHESTER,	J. H. EMERSON,	HARVEY J. SKIFF,
DAVID BUNKER,	R. L. B. CLARKE,	J. A. PARVIN,
D. P. PALMER,	JAMES A. YOUNG,	W. PENN CLARK,
GEO. W. ELLS,	D. H. SOLOMON,	JERE. HOLLINGSWORTH,
J. C. HALL,	M. W. ROBINSON,	WM. PATTERSON,
JOHN H. PETERS,	LEWIS TODHUNTER,	D. W. PRICE,
WM. H. WARREN,	JOHN EDWARDS,	ALPHEUS SCOTT,
H. W. GRAY,	J. C. TRAER,	GEORGE GILLASPY,
ROBT. GOWER,	JAMES F. WILSON,	EDWARD JOHNSTONE,
H. D. GIBSON,	AMOS HARRIS,	
THOMAS SEELEY,	JNO T. CLARKE,	

Attest:

FRANCIS SPRINGER, *President.*

TH. J. SAUNDERS, *Secretary.*

E. N. BATES, *Assistant Secretary.*

## SUMMARY OF AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION

By proper legislative action (11 G. A., chap. 98, and 12 G. A., joint res. No. XI), by vote of the people, November 3, 1868, and proclamation of the governor December 8, 1868.

First — Strike the word “white” from section one of article two thereof.

Second — Strike the word “white” from section thirty-three of article three thereof.

Third — Strike the word “white” from section thirty-four of article three thereof.

Fourth — Strike the word “white” from section thirty-five of article three thereof.

Fifth — Strike the word “white” from section one of article six thereof.

By proper legislative action (17 G. A., joint res. No. 5, and 18 G. A., joint res. No. 6), by vote of the people, November 2, 1880, and certificate of the board of state canvassers, December 3, 1880.

Strike out the words “free white” from the third line of section four (4) of article three (3) of said constitution, relating to the legislative department.

By proper legislative action (18 G. A., joint res. No. 8, and 19

G. A., joint res. No. 8), by vote of the people, June 27, 1882, and certificate of the board of state canvassers, July 28, 1882.

Section 26. No person shall manufacture for sale, or sell, or keep for sale, as a beverage, any intoxicating liquors whatever, including ale, wine, and beer. The general assembly shall by law prescribe regulations for the enforcement of the prohibition herein contained, and shall thereby provide suitable penalties for the violation of the provisions hereof.

[The Supreme court, April 21, 1883, in the case of Koehler & Lange vs. Hill, reported in 60th Iowa, page 543, held that the amendment, section 26, as submitted to the electors did not become a part of the constitution.]

By proper legislative action (19 G. A., joint res. No. 12, and 20 G. A., joint res. No. 13), by vote of the people, November 4, 1884, and certificate of the board of state canvassers, December 10, 1884.

Amendment 1. The general election for state, district, county, and township officers, shall be held on the Tuesday next after the first Monday in November.

Amendment 2. At any regular session of the general assembly, the state may be divided into the necessary judicial districts for district court purposes, or the said districts may be reorganized and the number of the districts and the judges of said courts increased or diminished; but no reorganization of the districts or diminution of the judges shall have the effect of removing a judge from office.

Amendment 3. The grand jury may consist of any number of members not less than five, nor more than fifteen, as the general assembly may by law provide, or the general assembly may provide for holding persons to answer for any criminal offense without the intervention of the grand jury.

Amendment 4. That Sec. 13 of article five of the constitution be stricken therefrom, and the following adopted as such section:

Section 13. The qualified electors of each county shall, at the general election in the year one thousand eight hundred and eighty-six, and every two years thereafter, elect a county attorney, who shall be a resident of the county for which he is elected, and shall hold his office for two years, and until his successor shall have been elected and qualified.

By proper legislative action (29 G. A., joint res. No. 2, and 30 G. A., joint res. No. 2), by vote of the people November eighth, one thousand nine hundred and four, and certificate of the board of state canvassers, November twenty-ninth, one thousand nine hundred and four.

That sections thirty-four (34), thirty-five (35) and thirty-six (36) of article three (3) of the constitution of the state of Iowa, be repealed and the following be adopted in lieu thereof:

Section 34. The senate shall be composed of fifty members to be elected from the several senatorial districts, established by law and at the next session of the general assembly held following the taking of the state and national census, they shall be apportioned among the several counties or districts of the state, according to population as shown by the last preceding census.

Section 35. The house of representatives shall consist of not more than one hundred and eight members. The ratio of representation shall be determined by dividing the whole number of the population of the state as shown by the last preceding state or national census, by the whole number of counties then existing or organized, but each county shall constitute one representative district and be entitled to one representative, but each county having a population in excess of the ratio number, as herein provided of three-fifths or more of such ratio number shall be entitled to one additional representative, but said addition shall extend only to the nine counties having the greatest population.

Section 36. The general assembly shall, at the first regular session held following the adoption of this amendment, and at each succeeding regular session held next after the taking of such census, fix the ratio of representation, and apportion the additional representatives, as hereinbefore required.

By proper legislative action (29 G. A., joint res. No. 5, and 30 G. A. joint res. No. 1), by vote of the people November eighth, one thousand nine hundred and four, and certificate of the board of state canvassers, November twenty-ninth, one thousand nine hundred and four.

\*Add as Sec. 16, to article twelve of the constitution, the following:

Sec. 16. The first general election after the adoption of this amendment shall be held on the Tuesday next after the first Monday in November in the year one thousand nine hundred and six, and general elections shall be held biennially thereafter. In the year one thousand nine hundred and six there shall be elected a governor, lieutenant-governor, secretary of state, auditor of state, treasurer of state, attorney-general, two judges of the supreme

\* Practically the same amendment was adopted by the people November 6, 1900, but the supreme court, February 1, 1901, in the case of the State of Iowa, ex rel Marsh W. Bailey vs. S.W. Brookhart, respondent, appellant, held that the amendment, section 16, was not proposed and adopted as required by the constitution, and did not become a part thereof.



court, the successors of the judges of the district court whose terms of office expire on December 31st, one thousand nine hundred and six, state senators who would otherwise be chosen in the year one thousand nine hundred and five, and members of the house of representatives. The terms of office of the judges of the supreme court which would otherwise expire on December 31st, in odd-numbered years, and all other elective state, county, and township officers whose terms of office would otherwise expire in January in the year one thousand nine hundred and six, and members of the general assembly whose successors would otherwise be chosen at the general election in the year one thousand nine hundred and five, are hereby extended one year and until their successors are elected and qualified. The terms of office of senators whose successors would otherwise be chosen in the year one thousand nine hundred and seven are hereby extended one year and until their successors are elected and qualified. The general assembly shall make such changes in the law governing the time of election and terms of office of all other elective officers as shall be necessary to make the time of their election and terms of office conform to this amendment, and shall provide which of the judges of the supreme court shall serve as chief justice. The general assembly shall meet in regular session on the second Monday in January, in the year one thousand nine hundred and six, and also on the second Monday in January in the year one thousand nine hundred and seven, and biennially thereafter.

By proper legislative action (31 G. A., joint res. No. 1, and 32 G. A., joint res. No. 2), by vote of the people November third, one thousand nine hundred eight, and certificate of the state board of canvassers, November twenty-third, one thousand nine hundred eight.

Add to Sec. 18 of article one of the constitution the following :

The general assembly, however, may pass laws permitting the owners of lands to construct drains, ditches, and levees for agricultural, sanitary, or mining purposes across the lands of others, and provide for the organization of drainage districts, vest the proper authorities with power to construct and maintain levees, drains, and ditches, and to keep in repair all drains, ditches, and levees heretofore constructed under the laws of the state, by special assessments upon the property benefited thereby. The general assembly may provide by law for the condemnation of such real estate as shall be necessary for the construction and maintenance of such drains, ditches, and levees, and prescribe the method of making such condemnation.





## INDEX

- Adjutant General, 97, 99.
- Administrative boards and commissions, 58-62.
- Agricultural experiment station, 94.
- Agriculture and Mechanic Arts, State College of, 93-94.
- Agriculture, State Board of, 62.
- Amendments to constitution, methods of passing, 51-52.
- Ames, 85, 94.
- Animal Health, Commission of, 62.
- Appeals, 68-69.
- Archives, Hall of, 61.
- Assessments, equalization of, 81.
- Assessor, duties of, 29, 97.
- Attorney-General, functions of, 69.  
importance of, 69.
- Auditor of State, powers and duties of, 56-57.  
salary of, 58.  
service of, on Executive Council, 58.
- Ballots, use of, at elections, 73-74.
- Bees, Inspector of, 61.
- Betting on election results, 77.
- Bills, enactment of, into laws, 48-49.
- Binder, State, 61.
- Black Hawk Purchase, 10, 11, 12.
- Black Hawk War, 10.
- Blind, College for, 59, 92.
- Board of Control, composition of, 58.  
institutions under, 58-59.  
powers and duties of, 59.  
salary of members of, 59.
- Boats, Inspector of, 61.
- Bribery, 77.
- Burlington, 11.  
capital at, 12, 13.
- Candidates, nomination of, 76-77.
- Caucuses, 76.
- Cedar Rapids, 67.
- Certificates, teachers', 89.
- Chambers, John, 13.
- Cities, classes of, 31.  
commission plan of government for, 33-34.  
officers of, 32-33.  
powers of, 31-32.  
reasons for establishment of, 31.  
streets in, 85.
- City Assessor, 33.
- City Attorney, 33.
- City Auditor, 33.
- City Clerk, 33, 75.
- City Engineer, 33.
- City Treasurer, 33.
- Civil cases, 64.
- Civil townships, 27.
- Civil War, Iowa and, 16-17.
- Claim Associations, 11.
- CLARKE, JAMES, 13.
- Clayton County, Spanish land grant in, 9.
- Clerk of District Court, powers and duties of, 40-41.

- Clerk of Supreme Court, 68.  
Clinton County, 26.  
Collection of taxes, 82.  
Commerce Counsel, 60.  
Commission plan of government,  
    features of, 33, 34.  
Compulsory education, 23.  
Congressional districts, 50.  
Congressional townships, 25.  
Constables, 29.  
Constitution of Iowa, methods  
    of amending, 51-52.  
    proposed equal suffrage  
        amendment to, 71-72.  
    text of, 100.  
Constitution of 1846, 16.  
Constitution of 1857, 16.  
Conventions, constitutional, 15,  
    16.  
    political, 76.  
Coroner, powers and duties of, 41.  
Corporation tax, 80.  
Council (city), members of, 32-  
    33.  
    reference to, 80, 81.  
Council Bluffs, 58, 67.  
Councilmen, position and salary  
    of, under commission gov-  
    ernment, 34.  
Counties, boundary lines of, 51.  
    first, in Iowa, 12.  
    organization of, 36.  
Counties, State Examiners for,  
    42.  
County Attorney, importance of,  
    69.  
    powers and duties of, 40, 69.  
County Auditor, powers and  
    duties of, 38-39.  
County Engineer, 84.  
County institutes, 89-90.  
County officers, 37-42.  
    compensation of, 42.  
County Recorder, powers and  
    duties of, 39-40.  
County road system, 84.  
County seat, 36-37.  
County Superintendent, method  
    of choosing, 41.  
    powers and duties of, 41, 42.  
    reference to, 89, 90.  
County Treasurer, powers and  
    duties of, 39.  
    reference to, 82.  
Courts, kinds of, 64.  
    purpose of, 64.  
Criminal cases, 64.  
Curators of State Historical  
    Society, Board of, 61.  
Custodian of Public Buildings  
    and Property, 61.  
Dairy and Food Commissioner,  
    61.  
Davenport, 11, 58.  
Deaf, School for, 58.  
Defendant, 64.  
Delegate to Congress, 15.  
Des Moines County, 12, 36.  
Dental Examiners, Board of, 62.  
Des Moines, battle near present  
    site of, 8.  
    reference to, 47.  
    removal of capital to, 16.  
"Des Moines Plan," 33.  
Des Moines River, 8.  
District Courts, 64, 65-67.  
District judges, election of, 67.  
    number of, 67.  
    salary of, 67.  
Divorces, 51.  
DODGE, AUGUSTUS C., 12.  
DODGE, HENRY, 12.  
Dog tax, 80.  
DUBUQUE, JULIEN, 9.  
Dubuque, 9, 11.  
Dubuque County, 12, 36.  
Education, State Board of, 59.  
    finance committee of, 92.  
    institutions under, 91-92.  
    members of, 91.  
    powers and duties of, 91-92.

- Educational Examiners, State Board of, 22, 62, 91.  
 Election officials, 75.  
 Election precincts, 72.  
 Elections, ballots at, 73-74.  
     challenging of voters at, 75.  
     conducting of primary, 76-77.  
     corrupt practices at, 77-78.  
     method of conducting, 74-75.  
     places of holding, 73.  
     time of holding, 72-73.  
 Engineering experiment station, 94.  
 Epileptics, State colony for, 59.  
 Examinations for teachers' certificates, 89.  
 Executive Council, composition of, 58.  
     functions of, 58.  
     reference to, 76, 81.  
 Executive officers, election of, 53.  
     list of minor, 61.  
     powers and duties of, 53-57.  
     salaries of, 57-58.  
 Exemptions from taxation, 82-83.  
 Explorations, 8-10.  
  
 Feeble-minded Children, Institution for, 58.  
 Female Inebriates, State Hospital for, 59.  
 Fines, use of, for schools, 88.  
 Fire Marshal, State, 61.  
 Fish and Game Warden, 61.  
 Flint Hills Township, 12.  
 FLOYD, CHARLES, death of, 10.  
 Fort Madison, 11, 59.  
 Fox Indians, 7.  
 France, jurisdiction of, over Iowa, 8-9.  
 Frenchmen, battle between Indians and, 8.  
     coming of, to Iowa county, 8.  
 General Assembly, compensation of members of, 47-48.  
     composition of, 45.  
     constitutional amendments proposed by, 51.  
     limitations on power of, 51.  
     passage of laws by, 48-49.  
     reference to, 76, 80.  
     relation of Governor to, 54-55.  
     sessions of, 47.  
     two houses of, 45-47.  
 General property tax, 80.  
 Geological Board, 62.  
 GIARD, BASIL, 9.  
 Governor, canvass of votes for, 75.  
     election and term of, 53-54.  
     powers and duties of, 54-55.  
     qualifications of, 54.  
     reference to, 90, 91, 99.  
     salary of, 57.  
     service of, on Executive Council, 58.  
     veto of laws by, 49.  
 Grinnell, 67.  
  
 Health, Board of, 61.  
 Health Physician, 33.  
 Hennepin, 8.  
 Highway Commission, State, 62, 85.  
 Historical Society of Iowa, State, 61, 95.  
 HONORÉ, LOUIS, 9.  
 Hotel Inspector, 61.  
 House of Representatives, composition of, 45.  
  
 Illegal voting, 77.  
 Independent districts, 20.  
 Indians, tribes of, in Iowa, 7.  
     removal of, from Iowa, 7.  
 Industrial Commissioner, 60.  
 Industrial Schools, 59.  
 Inebriates, State Hospital for, 59.



- Inheritance tax, 80.  
 Insane, Hospitals for, 59.  
 Insurance, Commissioner of, 60.  
 Iowa, admission of, into Union, 15.  
     claim associations in, 11.  
     constitutions of, 16.  
     early settlements in, 11.  
     early territorial governments over, 10.  
     exploration of, 8-10.  
     first counties in, 12.  
     history of territory of, 13, 15.  
     jurisdictions of France and Spain over, 8-9.  
     jurisdiction of Michigan territory over, 11-12.  
     jurisdiction of Wisconsin territory over, 12.  
     later history of, 17.  
     organization of counties in, 36.  
     Spanish land grants in, 9.  
 Iowa City, capital removed to, 13.  
     constitutional conventions at, 15, 16.  
     reference to, 59, 92, 95.  
     removal of capital from, 16.  
 Iowa National Guard, 97, 99.  
 Iowa River, landing of Frenchmen at mouth of, 8.  
 Ioway Indians, 7.  
  
 Jackson County, 26.  
 JOLIET, LOUIS, exploration of, 8.  
 Judicial districts, 66, 67.  
 Julien Township, 12.  
 Justices of the Peace, 28, 29, 33, 75.  
     courts held by, 65.  
  
 Keokuk, 11, 67.  
  
 LA SALLE, Louisiana named by, 8.  
  
 Labor Statistics, Bureau of, 62.  
 Land surveys, system of, 25-27.  
 Law Examiners, Board of, 62.  
 Laws, enforcement of, 69.  
     limitations on power to pass, 51.  
     method of passing, 48, 49.  
     taking effect of, 49, 51.  
     veto of, by Governor, 49.  
 Lawsuits, 64-65.  
 Lee County, Spanish land grant in, 9.  
 Le Sueur, 8.  
 LEWIS and CLARK expedition, 9-10.  
  
 Library, State, 61, 95.  
 Library Commission, 62.  
 Library Trustees, Board of, 61.  
 Lieutenant Governor, 47.  
     canvass of votes for, 76.  
     election of, 53-54.  
     functions of, 55-56.  
     salary of, 57.  
 Lotteries, prohibition of, 51.  
 Louisiana, district of, 10.  
     naming of province of, 8.  
     purchase of, by United States, 9.  
     retrocession of, to France, 9.  
     territory of, 10.  
     transfer of, from France to Spain, 8-9.  
 LUCAS, ROBERT, governorship of, 13.  
  
 Marquette, exploration of, 8.  
 Marriage licenses, 40.  
 Marshal, 33.  
 Mayor, position and salary of, under commission government, 34.  
     powers and duties of, 33.  
     reference to, 75.  
 Medical Examiners, Board of, 62.  
 Meskwaki Indians, 7.

- Michigan Territory, jurisdiction of, over Iowa, 11-12.  
 Militia, 97.  
 Mine Inspectors, Board of Examiners for, 62.  
 Mine Inspectors, State, 61.  
 Minnesota, 12, 13.  
 Mississippi River, exploration of, 8, 10.  
 Missouri, Territory of, 10.  
 Missouri, boundary dispute between Iowa and, 13.  
 Montreal, French expedition from, 8.  
 Motor vehicle taxes, 80, 85.  
 Municipal officers, 32-33.  
 Municipalities, classification of, 31.  
     incorporation of, 31.  
     powers of, 31-32.  
 Muscatine, 11.
- NAPOLEON BONAPARTE, 9.  
 New England, place of township in, 27.  
 Nomination of candidates, 76-77.  
 Normal training, 90.  
 North Dakota, 12, 13.
- Oelwein, 67.  
 Oils, State Inspector of, 61.  
 Old Stone Capitol, 13, 14.  
 Optometry Examiners, Board of, 62.  
 Ordinance of 1787, 19.
- Parole, Board of, 61.  
 Penitentiary, 59.  
 Perry, 67.  
 Pharmacy, Commissioners of, 62.  
 PIKE, ZEBULON M., expedition of, 10.  
 Plaintiff, 64.  
 Police Court, 33.  
 Police Judge, 33.
- Policemen, 33.  
 Political parties, 77.  
 Poll tax, 80.  
 Polling places, 73.  
 Pottawattamie Indians, 7.  
 Primary elections, 76-77.  
 Printer, State, 61.  
 Property, assessment of, 81.
- Railroad Commissioners, Board of, election of, 59.  
     powers and duties of, 60.  
     salary of members of, 60.  
 Reformatory, 59.  
 Representative districts, 44.  
 Road taxes, 80, 85.  
 Roads, building of early, 84.  
     establishment and care of, 84-85.  
     taxes for, 85.  
 Rock Island, treaty made on, 10.  
     reference to, 12.
- Sac and Fox Indians, 7, 13.  
     battle between French and, 8.  
     Black Hawk War with, 10.  
 School board, 21.  
 School elections, functions of, 20.  
     voters at, 20-21.  
 School funds, 87-88.  
 School system, public, origin of, 19.  
 School taxes, 88.  
 School townships, 20.  
 Schools, establishment of, 19.  
     provisions relative to, 20-23.  
     system of, 87.  
 Scott County, 26.  
 Secretary of school board, 21.  
 Secretary of State, powers and duties of, 56.  
     salary of, 57-58.  
     service of, on Executive Council, 58.

- Senate (State), composition of, 45-47.  
 Senatorial districts, 46.  
 Settlements, first, 11.  
 Shenandoah, 67.  
 Sheriff, powers and duties of, 40-41.  
 Sioux City, FLOYD's grave near, 10.  
 Sioux Indians, 7.  
 Soldiers' Home, 58.  
 Soldiers' Orphans' Home, 58.  
 South Dakota, 12, 13.  
 Spain, jurisdiction of, over Iowa, 9.  
 Speaker of House of Representatives, 45.  
 Special charter cities, 31.  
 State debt, limitation of, 51.  
 Street Commissioner, 33, 85.  
 Suffrage, meaning of, 71.  
 Superintendent of Public Instruction, appointment of, 90.  
     powers and duties of, 90-91.  
 Superior Courts, election of judges of, 67.  
     jurisdiction of, 67.  
     number of, 67.  
     salary of judges, 67.  
 Supervisors, Board of, powers and duties of, 37-38, 76, 80, 81, 84, 88.  
 Supreme Court, division of, 68.  
     election and salary of justices of, 68.  
     functions of, 68.  
     sessions of, 68.  
 Supreme Court Reporter, 68.  
 Tama County, Indians in, 7.  
 Tax rate, determining of, 81-82.  
     reasons for, 81-82.  
 Taxation, exemptions from, 82-83.  
 Taxes, collection of, 82.  
     kinds of, 80.  
     levy of, 80.  
 Teachers, county institutes for, 89-90.  
     hiring of, 22.  
 Teachers' College, State, 91, 94-95.  
 Tesson, 9.  
 Textbooks, choosing of, 22.  
     provisions for free, 22.  
 Towns, officers of, 32-33.  
     powers of, 31-32.  
     reasons for establishment of, 31.  
     streets in, 85.  
 Township officers, 28.  
     compensation of, 29.  
 Township road system, 84-85.  
 Township Trustees, powers and duties of, 28, 75, 80, 81, 84, 85.  
 Townships, functions of, 27-28.  
     kinds of, 25.  
     officers of, 28-29.  
 Treasurer of school corporation, 22.  
 Treasurer of State, powers and duties of, 57.  
     salary of, 58.  
     service of, on Executive Council, 58.  
 Treating to secure votes, 77.  
 Tuberculosis, State Sanatorium for the Treatment of, 59.  
 Tuition, 22-23.  
 University of Iowa, State, 13, 91, 92, 93.  
 Veterinary Surgeon, State, 61.  
 Vinton, 59, 92.  
 Voters, challenging of, 75.  
     qualifications of, 72.

- Voters, registration of, 72.  
Votes, canvassing of, 75-76.  
Voting, method of, 74-75.  
Voting Machine Commissioners,  
    Board of, 62.  
Voting machines, use of, 73, 74,  
    75.  
Weather and Crop Service, Di-  
    rector of, 61.  
Weights and Measures, Inspec-  
    tor of, 61.  
Winnebago Indians, 7.  
Wisconsin, 12.  
Wisconsin Territory, jurisdiction  
    of, over Iowa, 12.  
Women, amendment extending  
    suffrage to, 71-72.  
    offices open to, 40, 41.  
    right of, to vote, 71.

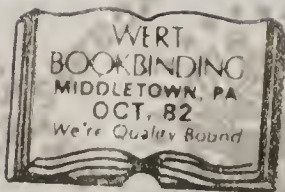


5100111



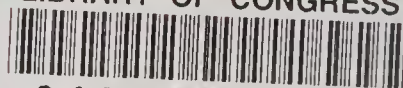








LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 019 308 860 0